ISBN: 978-93-95847-64-3

VITAL DISCOVERIES: BREAKTHROUGHS IN PHARMA AND HEALTH SCIENCE

EDITORS:
MRS. NIVEDITHA B T
PROF. SULEKHA TRIPATHI
DR. SWATI KOLI
DR. AVERINERI RAVI KUMAR

BHUMI PUBLISHING, INDIA FIRST EDITION: AUGUST 2024

Vital Discoveries: Breakthroughs in Pharma and Health Science

(ISBN: 978-93-95847-64-3)

Editors

Mrs. Niveditha B T

Department of Botany,

Davangere University

Shivagangothri, Tolahunse, Davangere

Prof. Sulekha Tripathi

Department of Science,

Vindhya Institute of Management and

Science, Satna, M.P.

Dr. Swati Koli

Nanaji Deshmukh Veterinary

Science University,

Jabalpur, M. P.

Dr. Averineri Ravi Kumar

Nimra College of Pharmacy,

Vijayawada,

Andhra Pradesh

Bhumi Publishing

August, 2024

Title: Vital Discoveries: Breakthroughs in Pharma and Health Science

Editors: Mrs. Niveditha B T, Dr. Sulekha Tripathi, Dr. Swati Koli, Dr. Averineri Ravi Kumar

First Edition: August, 2024

ISBN: 978-93-95847-64-3

Published by:

Bhumi Publishing

BHUMI PUBLISHING

Nigave Khalasa, Tal – Karveer, Dist – Kolhapur, Maharashtra, INDIA 416 207

E-mail: bhumipublishing@gmail.com

PREFACE

The pharmaceutical and health sciences fields are at the forefront of scientific innovation, continually evolving to address the complexities of human health and well-being. As we stand on the cusp of a new era in medicine, the significance of groundbreaking discoveries cannot be overstated. These advancements not only revolutionize our approach to treatment and care but also enhance our understanding of the intricate mechanisms that govern life itself.

The book Vital Discoveries: Breakthroughs in Pharma and Health Science aims to capture the essence of these transformative developments. It delves into the most pivotal research and innovations that have reshaped the landscape of modern healthcare. From the advent of novel therapeutic agents to the application of cutting-edge technologies, this compilation provides an in-depth exploration of the breakthroughs that are setting new standards in the industry.

Each chapter of this book is dedicated to a specific discovery or innovation that has made a significant impact on the field. The authors, who are leading experts in their respective domains, offer valuable insights into the challenges and triumphs associated with these advances. Their contributions underscore the collaborative efforts of scientists, researchers, and healthcare professionals in driving progress and improving patient outcomes.

As you navigate through the pages of this book, you will encounter a wealth of knowledge that reflects the relentless pursuit of excellence in pharma and health science. It is our hope that this compilation serves as a source of inspiration and a catalyst for further innovation in the quest to enhance human health.

We extend our deepest gratitude to the contributors whose expertise and dedication have made this book possible. Their work is a testament to the power of science and the promise of a healthier future.

Editors

TABLE OF CONTENT

GENE THERAPY: UNDERSTANDING THE CURRENT STATE TO GUIDE FUTURE CARE

Eega Madhuri[1], Kalla Madhavi[2], Himabindu K[3], Swathi Varsa[2], Revathi Boddu[4] and Narender Boggula*[5]

[1]CMR College of Pharmacy, Kandlakoya, Medchal, Hyderabad, Telangana, India.

[2]Care College of Pharmacy, Oglapur, Damera, Warangal, Telangana, India.

[3]Vaagdevi Pharmacy College, Bollikunta, Warangal, Telangana, India.

[4]Malla Reddy Institute of Pharmaceutical Sciences, Dhulapally, Secunderabad, Telangana

[5]Omega College of Pharmacy, Edulabad, Ghatkesar, Hyderabad, Telangana, India.

*Corresponding author E-mail: drnarenderboggula@gmail.com

Abstract:

Gene therapy may be roughly described as the transfer of genetic material in order to treat an illness or enhance a patient's clinical condition. One of the fundamental principles of gene therapy is the transformation of viruses into genetic shuttles capable of delivering the desired gene into target cells. These gene therapy vectors are classified as RNA or DNA viral vectors based on the structure of the viral genome. The bulk of RNA virus-based vectors are derived from basic retroviruses, such as murine leukaemia virus. A key limitation of these vectors is their inability to transduce nondividing cells. This issue may be solved by using innovative retroviral vectors generated from lentiviruses, such as human immunodeficiency. The most prevalent DNA viral vectors are derived from adenoviruses and adeno-associated viruses. As one of the most hotly debated issues of the new century, gene therapy contains the thrill of a cure for most ailments, the controversy surrounding the alteration of human imperfection, and the promise of a sort of medical care most of us would never believe conceivable. Gene therapy has the potential to cure most ailments. Gene therapy is one of the most exciting disciplines of medicine. The notion of gene delivery to tissues for therapeutic purposes has been considered for over a half-century, but scientists' capacity to modify genetic material using recombinant DNA technology has made this goal a reality. Several techniques, including viral and non-viral vectors. Gene therapy holds promise as a life-changing option for individuals with genetic variants that give rise to disease. This review will summarize the gradual advent of gene therapies from bench to bedside with a main focus on gene therapy applications, vectors, strategies, advantages, disadvantages and will provide some useful insights into the future of genetic therapies and their gradual integration in the everyday clinical practice. Finally, from an ethics standpoint, it is important to consider whether medicine should surrender to the rule of technology or commit to a more responsible steering of the course of progress.

Keywords: Gene Therapy, Molecular Biology, Genome Editing, Genetic Vectors, Genetic Disease.

Introduction:

Advances in molecular biology were achieved in the early 1980s. It has previously been shown that human genes can be sequenced and cloned. Scientists are looking for novel ways to readily produce proteins such as insulin in diabetic individuals. Modified bacteria can be gathered and injected into persons who are incapable of producing it naturally. Scientists attempt to insert genes directly into human cells, concentrating on disorders caused by single-gene mutations such as cystic fibrosis, haemophilia, muscular dystrophy, and sickle-cell anaemia. Gene therapy for haemophilia B and other inherited plasma protein shortages has showed considerable promise in preclinical and early clinical trials [1,2].

Drugs can be generally classified into two categories: chemical small molecule drugs and biological macromolecular drugs. With the development of science and technology, cell drugs have shifted from research and development to application. In addition, artificial organ cloning is also expected to be possible in the future. As drugs became increasingly complex in structure and diverse in function, their development has also become more challenging [1,3].

In 2017, the use of genetically modified T-cells, known as chimeric antigen receptor (CAR) T-cell immunotherapy, was approved by the US Food and Drug Administration (FDA), revolutionizing tumor therapy. CAR-T cell therapy, which includes a combination of gene and cell technology, has marked the beginning of the "new era of gene and cell therapy". Thus far, CAR-T cell therapy has shown good application prospects in the treatment of various hematologic malignancies, such as acute lymphoblastic leukemia (ALL), lymphoma, acute myeloid leukemia, and multiple myeloma. However, CAR-T cell therapy has been found to be less effective in the treatment of solid tumours due to the complexity of the microenvironment, heterogeneity of solid tumor antigens, diversity of immune evasion mechanisms, and difficulties in migration and permeation to solid tumours. On the other hand, genetically engineered mesenchymal stem cells (EMSCs) have shown a promising effect when treating solid malignant tumours [4,5].

In the historical development of drugs, if the development of chemical drugs can be called the 1.0 era and the development of biological drugs is called the 2.0 era, then the development of gene and cell therapy drugs can be considered the 3.0 era, while tissue and organ cloning will be considered the 4.0 era (Figure 1) [6].

Recent advances in cell and gene therapies have enabled the treatment of a wide range of conditions, from congenital disorders to solid cancers. Since the first gene therapy in 1990, numerous efforts have been made, which have culminated in the approval of several gene therapy products in recent years, ushering humanity into a new era of gene therapy. Several milestones along the path of gene therapy research paved the way for science to be translated into products from the bench to the bedside. Examining the trends of successful innovative strategies in this field provides valuable information for future research, improved study designs, and realistic policy-making for gene therapy research centers [7,8].

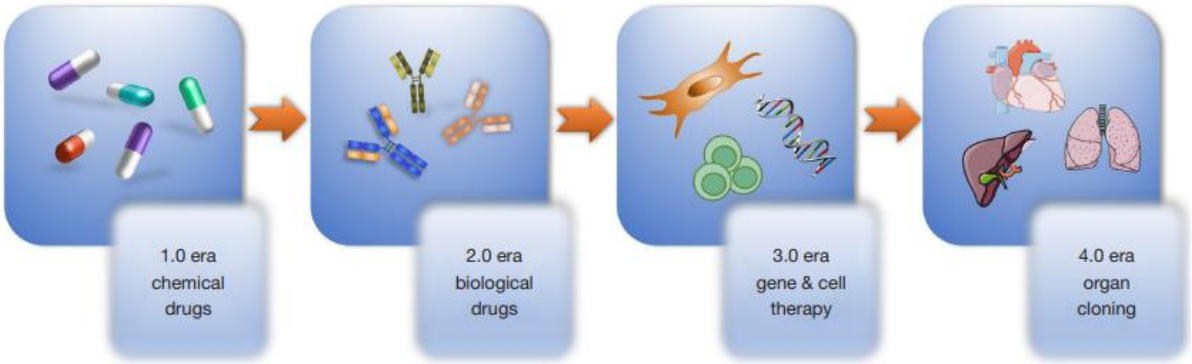


Figure 1: A map showing the development process of drugs. Chemical drugs belong to the 1.0 era, biological drugs belong to the 2.0 era, gene and cell therapy drugs belong to the 3.0 era, and tissue and organ cloning belong to the 4.0 era

With the discoveries that DNA codes for genes and that a DNA sequence can have variants that increase disease susceptibility, a future was envisioned in which modifying genetic material to reduce disease risk/progression is achievable. Multiple possibilities arose to modify genetic material, including taking cells out of the body to correct genetics followed by delivery back to the individual (*ex vivo* gene therapy), packaging material to make the changes systemically (*in vivo* gene therapy), or targeting a tissue or cell to be edited (*in situ* gene therapy). Gene therapy consists of packaging nucleic acids (plasmid, DNA, RNA, antisense oligonucleotides) or gene editing machinery such as clustered regularly interspaced short palindromic repeats-CRISPR- and CRISPR-associated protein 9 (Cas9)-with guide RNA within a particle, often formed by an attenuated virus or nanoparticle, and delivering it to a cell or tissue to modulate a desired gene. While animal models showed incredible promise for gene therapy in the 1970s and 1980s, there were early signs of safety risks posed by delivering biomaterials to humans [9-11].

Genes

Genes are the fundamental physical and functional unit of heredity. A gene is an ordered sequence of nucleotides located in a particular position on a particular chromosome that encodes a specific functional product (i.e., a protein or RNA molecule). Gene is termed as a “biological unit of heredity”. Inherited from the parents, determines the unique traits - like the colour of the eyes and colour and texture of the hair. They also determine things like whether the child will be male or female, the amount of oxygen the blood can carry, and what the IQ will be [12].

Genes are composed of long strands of a molecule called DNA and are located in single file within the chromosomes. The genetic message is encoded by subunits of the DNA called nucleotides. There are approximately three billion pairs of nucleotides in the chromosomes of a human cell. Each person's genetic makeup has a unique sequence of nucleotides, and this is what makes us different from one another. Scientists believe that every human has about 30,000 genes per cell. A mutation or imperfection in any one of these genes can result in a disease, physical disability or shortened life span. These mutations can be passed from one generation to another,

inherited just like a mother’s blond hair or a father's brown eyes. But with gene therapy, the treatment or elimination of inherited diseases or physical conditions due to these mutations could become a reality [13].

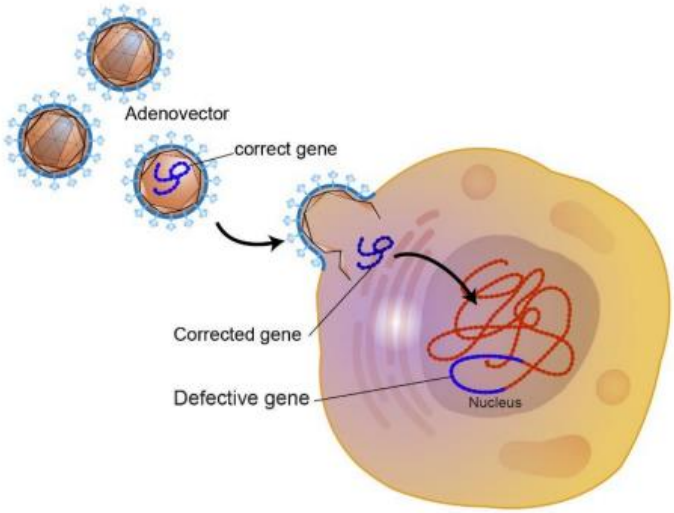


Figure 2: Concept of gene therapy

History of gene therapy

During mid-1960s, researchers estimated that DNA groupings could be embedded into patients' cells to treat hereditary diseases. It was Martin Cline that initially endeavoured to adjust human DNA in 1980, anyway the first fruitful result of atomic quality was seen after a long stretch finally in May 1989. The main helpful use and furthermore the initial direct addition of human DNA into atomic genome was accomplished in September 1990 by French Anderson. In the year 1990, 4-year-old Ashanthi de Silva turned into the principal quality treatment example of overcoming adversity. She was brought into the world with an extreme joined immunodeficiency (SCID) because of the absence of protein adenosine deaminase (ADA). In absence of ADA, her T cells died off, making her inadequate to battle contaminations. Infusions of an engineered ADA compound aided, however just immediately. Specialists chose to convey a relatively solid ADA quality into her platelets, by the utilization of an impaired infection that can't spread in the body.

The achievement they accomplished empowered more preliminaries for a similar type of SCID during the 1990s. Presently in her 30s, de Silva is loaded with life even after having an uncommon sickness. Between the hour of 1989 to December 2018, a bigger more than 2,900 clinical preliminaries were led, with the more significant part of them in the stage 1. Starting at Spark Therapeutics' Luxturna in 2017 (for visual deficiency prompted by RPE65 Mutation) and Novartis' Kymriah (antigen T-cell treatment of chimeric receptor) are principal quality treatments to enter the market endorsed by the FDA. Since that time, medications like Alnylam's Patisiran and Novartis' Zolgensma have likewise gotten the backing of the FDA, notwithstanding other organizations' quality treatment drugs. The vast majority of these techniques use Adeno-

Associated Virus (AAVs) and lentivirus for executing quality inclusions, *ex-vivo* and *in-vivo* individually [14-17].

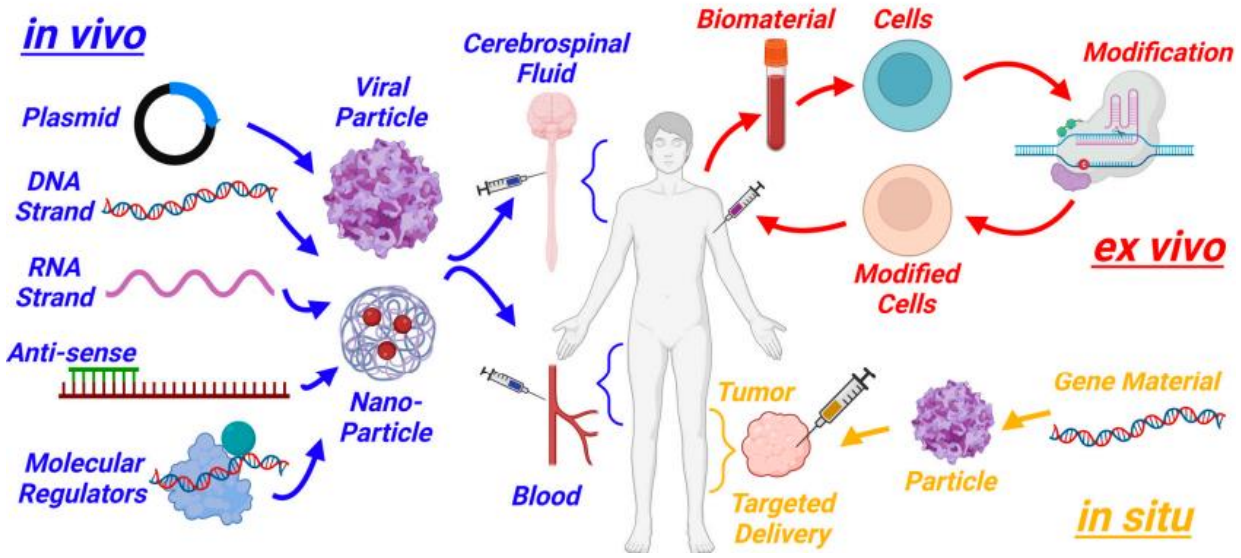


Figure 3: Schematic of three gene therapy approaches: *in vivo*, *ex vivo*, and *in situ*

Gene therapy can be broadly defined as a transfer of genetic material to cure a disease or at least to improve the clinical status of a patient. One of the basic concepts of gene therapy is to transform viruses into genetic shuttles, which would deliver the gene of interest into the target cells. Based on the nature of the viral genome, these gene therapy vectors could be divided into RNA and/or DNA viral vectors. The majority of RNA virus-based vectors have been derived from simple retroviruses like murine leukemia virus. A major shortcoming of these vectors is that they are not able to transduce non-dividing cells. This problem may be overcome by use of novel retroviral vectors, derived from lentiviruses, such as human immunodeficiency virus (HIV). The most commonly used DNA virus vectors are based on adenoviruses and adeno-associated viruses (AAVs).

Although, the available vector systems are able to deliver genes *in vivo* into cells, the ideal delivery vehicle has not been found. Thus, the present viral vectors should be used only with great caution in human beings and further progress in vector development is necessary. Gene transfer technologies are promising tools to manipulate donor T-cell immunity to enforce graft-versus-tumor/graft-versus-infection, while prevention or control of graft versus host disease. For this purpose, several cell and gene transfer approaches have been investigated at the pre-clinical level and implemented in clinical trials. The nuclear envelope represents a key barrier to successful non-viral transfection and gene therapy both *in vitro* and *in vivo*. Although the main purpose of the nuclear envelope is too partite the cell to maintain cytoplasmic components in the cytoplasm and nuclear components, the most notably genomic DNA in the nucleus, this function poses a problem for transfections, in which exogenous DNA is delivered into the cytoplasm. After delivery to the cytoplasm, nucleic acids rapidly become more complex, with cellular proteins that mediate interactions with the cell machinery for their traffic. Thus,

these proteins are that, in essence, which control the nuclear import of DNA, and we must also understand their activities in cells. Gene therapy for neurological, and in particular, neurodegenerative, diseases, is now a reality. A number of early phase clinical trials have been completed and several are currently in progress.

In view of this, it is critically important to be evaluated the immunological risk, associated with neurological gene therapy, which has clear implications for trial safety and efficacy. Moreover, it is imperative in particular to identify factors, indicating potential high risk. Viral vectors are potent gene-delivery platforms, used for the treatment of genetic and acquired diseases. However, just as viruses have evolved to infect cells efficiently, the immune system has evolved to fight off what it perceives as invading pathogens. Therefore, innate immunity and antigen-specific adaptive immune responses against vector-derived antigens reduce the efficacy and stability of *in vivo* gene transfer. In addition, a number of vectors are derived from parent viruses that humans encounter through natural infection, resulting in pre-existing antibodies and possibly in memory responses against vector antigens. Similarly, antibody and T-cell responses might be directed against therapeutic gene products that often differ of the endogenous non-functional or absent protein that is being replaced. As details and mechanisms of such immune reactions are uncovered, novel strategies are being developed, and vectors are being specifically engineered to avoid, suppress and/or manipulate the response, ideally resulting in sustained expression and immune tolerance to the transgene product [18-22].

Vectors for gene therapy

A cell carrying substance called as vector can be used for delivering cells to DNA by various methods. The two main categories are non-viral and viral vectors.

Viral vectors

During the process of replication, the virus introduces into the host cell it’s genetic material, enticing the cellular apparatus of the host to use it as a blueprint for viral proteins.

The retrovirus takes it a step further, in which the genetic material is copied into the host cell genome. Advantage of this is taken by scientists by placing healing DNA in place of genetic material of the virus (Some viruses have RNA as genetic material, so gene therapy can also use RNA). Numerous viruses are being utilized in human gene therapy which includes adenoviruses, herpes simplex virus, retrovirus and adeno-associated and vaccinia viruses. Like the hereditary substance (DNA or RNA) of a virus, remedial DNA can be used simply as a transitory outline, either naturally degraded or (in theory at least) enters the host's genome, turning into an everlasting part of the DNA of the host in the infected cells [23,24].

Non-viral vectors

Big-scale manufacture and lower host immunogenicity are some of the advantages of non-viral vectors over the viral vectors. However, the non-viral methods first produce minor stages of gene expression and transfection and therefore have lesser therapeutic effects. After the onset of subcellular transport control and cell specific targeting, new technologies offer the potential to solve these problems. Gene gun, non-operation, naked DNA injection, magneto

transfection, electroporation, the use of oligonucleotides, lipoplexes, inorganic nanoparticles and dendrimers are methods of non-viral gene therapy.

Newer methods, such as those implemented by companies such as Ligandal, provide opportunities to produce targeting technologies which are cell specific for various gene therapy methods, including some of gene excision tools such as RNA, DNA, and CRISPR. Some other companies, such as Arcturus Therapeutics and Arbutus Biopharma and provide non-targeted and non-viral methods that mainly include nutrition of liver. Recently, startups like GenEdit, Spotlight Therapeutics and Sixfold Bio have commenced to resolve the problem of non-viral gene delivery.

Benefit of non-viral methods is that it provides opportunities for repeated administration and greater adaptability of gene payloads, which will replace virus-based delivery systems in the future. Companies including Intellia Therapeutics, Editas Medicine, CRISPR Therapy, Cellectis, Casebia, Precision Biosciences, Sangamo and bluebird bio have invented non-viral gene editing technologies; though, they usually even now use viruses after being guided by nucleases for genome cleavage to carry the gene insertion material. The above-mentioned companies focus on gene editing, but even though they face major delivery problems. Moderna Therapeutics, and CureVac and BioNTech pay attention on the transport of mRNA payloads, that are usually non-viral transfer problem. Ionis Pharmaceuticals, Alnylam and Dicerna Pharmaceuticals, emphasize the transport of siRNA (antisense oligonucleotides) to supress gene, which also requires non-viral delivery systems [25-28].

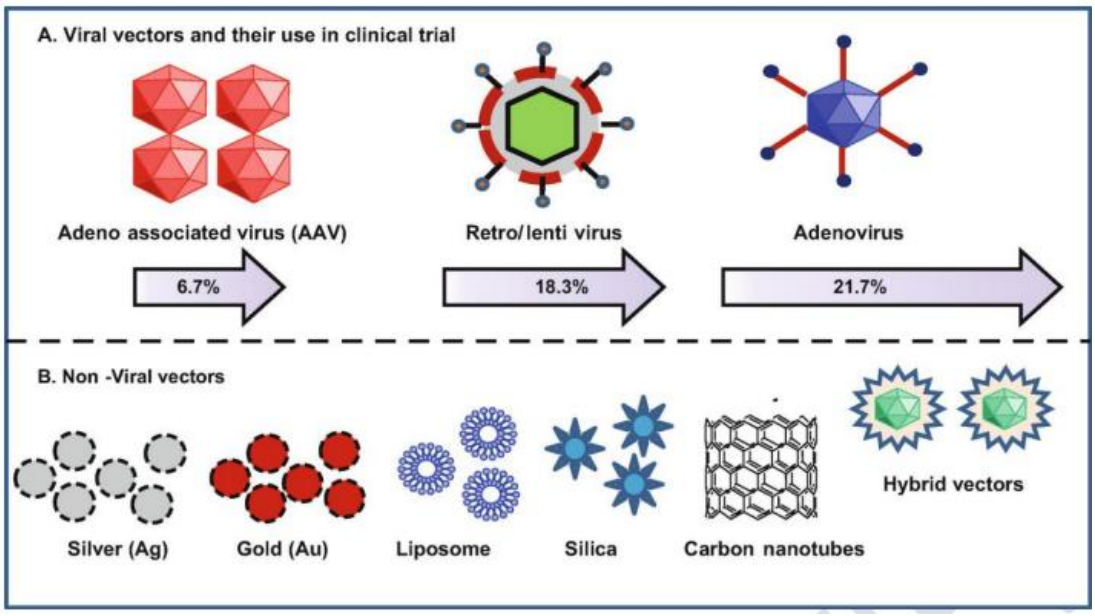


Figure 4: Types of vectors in gene therapy

Table 1: List of already approved gene therapy products

Product	Indication	Company	Viral vector	Delivery	Status
Luxturna	Retinal dystrophy	Spark Therapeutics (Roche)	Adeno associated virus	*In vivo*	Approved in United States
Zolgensma	Spinal muscular atrophy	AveXis (Novartis)	Adeno associated virus	*In vivo*	Approved in United States
Kymriah	B-cell lymphoma	Novartis	Lentivirus	*Ex vivo*	Approved in United States
Yescarta	B-cell lymphoma	Kite Pharma (Gilead Sciences)	Lentivirus	*Ex vivo*	Approved in United States
Zynteglo	Thalassemia, Sickle Cell Disease	Bluebird Bio	Lentivirus	*Ex vivo*	Approved in Europe
Collategene	Critical Limb ischaemia	AnGes	Plasmid	*In vivo*	Approved in Japan

Advantages of gene therapy

- In case of 'silence' a gene. In the case of someone with HIV, which had not yet developed into AIDS, scientists could save them the pain and suffering of the disease by using gene therapy to 'silence' the disease before its onset.
- Gene therapy has the potential to eliminate and prevent hereditary diseases such as cystic fibrosis and is a possible cure for heart disease, AIDS and cancer.
- These sceptics would almost certainly choose gene therapy, especially if it was the last hope for them or one of their loved ones - as is the case for many gene therapy patients.

Disadvantages of gene therapy

- Short-lived nature of gene therapy.
- Immune response - Genes injected with a virus may trigger an immune response against the virus. Problems with viral vectors (once inside the patient, the viral vector could recover its ability to cause disease).
- Multigene disorders - The genetic material might not get into the right cell, or the right place in the cell's DNA.

Ethical issues surrounding gene therapy

The ethics of gene therapy are as multi-faceted as the field of medicine itself. However, the ethical issues surrounding gene therapy are less about gene therapy itself and more about the medical, cultural, social, and political contexts in which it emerged. We cannot boil down these

questions and issues to one-time decisions and solutions, which would disregard the relational and longitudinal nature of ethics.

The ethical complexities of gene therapy are not confined to the consent process or the procedure, nor does the ethics review process resolve them. Rather, the treatment unfurls a multitude of ethical dilemmas, which manifest both in discrete moments of choice and the on-going endeavour of how to live well or care well in the aftermath of the event itself [29-32].

- Who decides which traits are normal and which constitute a disability or disorder?
- Will the high costs of gene therapy make it available only to the wealthy?
- Could the widespread use of gene therapy make society less accepting of people who are different?
- Should people be allowed to use gene therapy to enhance basic human traits such as height, intelligence, or athletic ability?

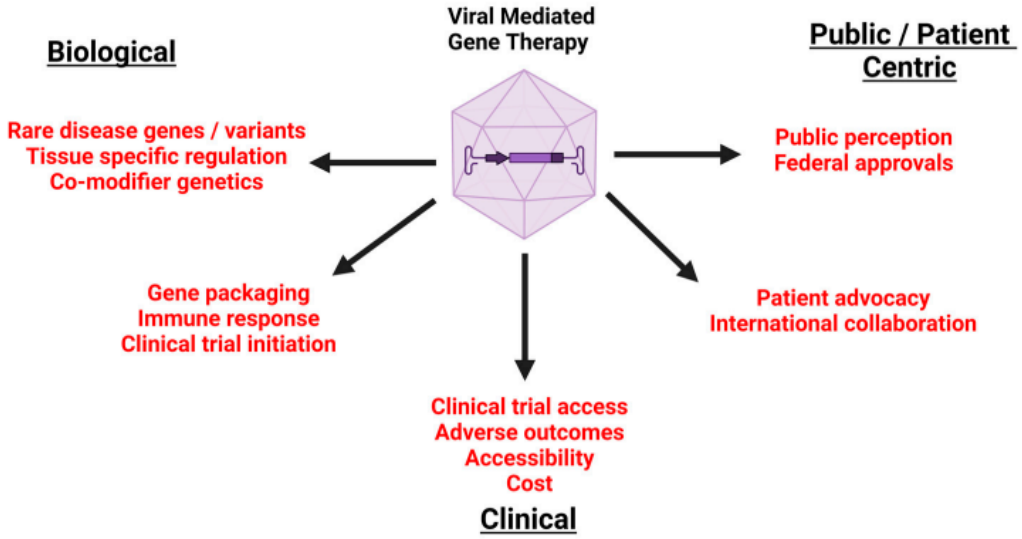


Figure 5: Summary of the ethical considerations of gene therapy

Process of gene therapy

There are 2 types of gene therapy.

1. Germ line gene therapy: Where germ cells (sperm or egg) are modified by the introduction of functional genes, which are integrated into their genome. Therefore, changes due to therapy would be heritable and would be passed on to later generation. Theoretically, this approach should be highly effective in counteracting genetic disease and here dietary disorders. But at present many jurisdictions, a variety of technical difficulties and ethical reasons make it unlikely that germ line therapy would be tried in human beings in near future.

2. Somatic gene therapy: Where therapeutic genes are transferred into the somatic cells of a patient. Any modifications and effects will be restricted to the individual patient only and will not be inherited by the patient's offspring or any later generation [33-36].

A glance at the journey of gene therapy

The history of gene therapy can be divided into four phases, as shown in Figure 6 [37-39].

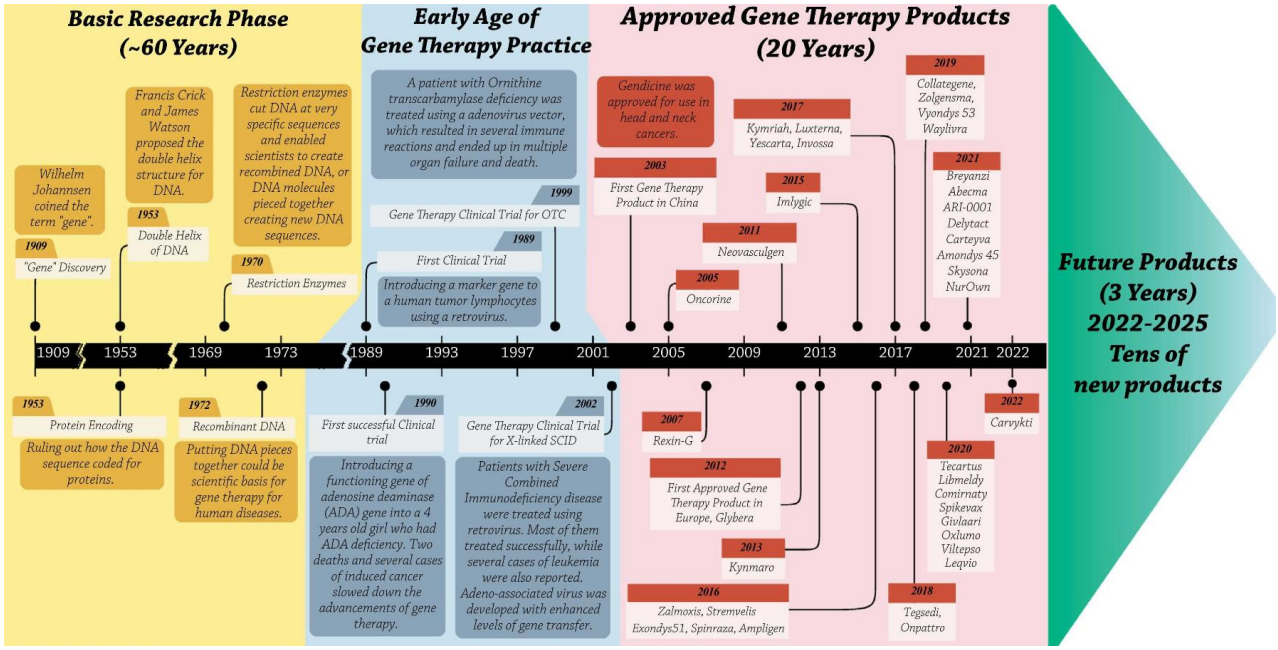


Figure 6: Historical timeline of gene therapy

From the "gene" to development of gene therapy as a tool; basic research phase (1909–1973):

The gene therapy journey began after Wilhelm Johannsen coined the term "gene". Francis Crick and James Watson discovered the double-helix structure of DNA after about a half-century. The term "genetic engineering" was first used in the 1930s. The basic principles of gene transfer in bacteria were discovered in the 1960s, which were then tailored into the development of eukaryote transfection techniques. The restriction and ligation enzymes, first described in the 1970s, form the foundation of gene manipulation. Recombinant DNA techniques enabled researchers to introduce selected therapeutic gene(s) into engineered vectors. With the discovery of viruses' ability to transfer genetic material, viral vectors have emerged as a promising and effective tool for gene transfer. These technological advancements enabled scientists to create gene therapy vectors capable of transferring specific genetic materials into target mammalian cells.

Early age of the gene therapy practice with sweet and sour (beginning of clinical trials) (1989–2003):

It took a century full of ups and down until the first clinical trial started. First of all, in 1989, a retrovirus was used to express a neomycin resistance marker on tumor-infiltrating lymphocytes, which was used in tracking infiltrated lymphocytes in the immunotherapy of melanoma. The next year (1990), scientists at the University of Pennsylvania initiated the first successful gene therapy clinical trial on a four-year-old girl, named Ashanti Desilva who was diagnosed with severe combined immunodeficiency (SCID). A retroviral vector was used to transfer a normal copy of adenosine deaminase (ADA) into her T cells. Although she did not become completely needless to recombinant ADA (PEG-ADA), currently she is experiencing normal life. However, the basic strategies of gene therapy were identified earlier, the use of viral

vectors accompanied by some adverse events like insertional mutagenesis and immune reactions, which slowed down the progression of clinical gene therapies.

In 2000, European researchers in Paris reported a successful clinical trial of X-linked SCID gene therapy aimed to replace the cytokine receptor (IL2RG) mutated gene, however, 5 of 20 treated children developed leukemia in later stages, as a result of activating an oncogene following the introduction of the transgene by the vector. At the same time in London, Thrasher and his colleagues in a similar gene therapy trial reported another case of leukemia after retroviral-mediated gene therapy for the most common form of SCID (SCID-X1). Meanwhile, in 1999, Jesse Gelsinger, an 18 years old boy diagnosed with a rare metabolic disease, who was volunteered to be the 18th person receiving an adenoviral vector encoding a normal copy of ornithine transcarbamylase gene died due to massive coagulation disorder and subsequent multi-organ failure, to be the first dead person of gene therapy. Although these setbacks slowed down the gene therapy progress, they also demonstrated the gene therapy potential and its bright future.

A phase from bust to boom [starting the approval of gene therapy products] (2003–2022):

In 2003, after approximately 686 clinical trials, the Chinese State Food and Drug Administration (SFDA) approved Gendicine, the first gene therapy product indicated for head and neck cancer. Two years later, the SFDA approved Oncorine, the first oncolytic virus indicated for nasopharyngeal carcinoma. A decade later, in 2012, the number of clinical trials became nearly doubled when European Medicines Agency (EMA) approved the first European gene therapy product, Glybera, indicated for Lipoprotein lipase deficiency. The first *ex-vivo* gene therapy product, Strimvelis, was approved by EMA in 2016. The United States Food and Drug Administration (FDA) approval of two chimeric antigen receptor (CAR) products in 2017, Kymriah and Yescarta, acts as a key milestone that pave the way for future products. Luxturna, the first FDA-approved *in-vivo* AAV (Adeno-associated virus) gene therapy product for Leber congenital amaurosis (LCA), was also approved in 2017.

In 2019, the FDA approved the most expensive drug to date, Zolgensma, an AAV vector indicated for pediatric spinal muscular atrophy. The number of approved gene therapy products increases every year. Given the new genetic technologies, such as clustered regularly interspaced short palindromic repeats (CRISPR) and zinc fingers, the production of gene-based therapeutics is anticipated to accelerate significantly. CRISPR technology has recently been used *ex-vivo* to treat sickle cell disease and beta-thalassemia, as well as *in-vivo* to treat transthyretin (ATTR) amyloidosis. Current gene therapy products are generally approved by FDA, EMA, and SFDA.

Future products (2022–2025):

Based on previous clinical trials and currently approved products, it appears that this promising field of medicine is advancing faster than ever before, with tens of new approved products expected in the near future. Several products are currently awaiting approval from regulatory agencies. With their approval, we are gradually incorporating gene therapy into the treatment of a broader range of diseases.

The most transferred genes

Investigating the functional type of transferred genetic material (categorized based on prior classification) revealed that genes encoding surface antigens were the most common type of gene (more than half of the clinical trials). Among them, different CAR genes (e.g., CD19, CD22, BCMA, etc.) were the most frequently incorporated genes as a surface marker (663 out of the total 948). The next most frequently transferred genes were those encoding cytokines and those encoding enzymes. Suicide genes, structural protein-encoding genes, and genes involved in the secretion of blood coagulation factors were among the other types of transferred genes [25,40].

Gene therapy strategies

Typically, therapeutic gene therapies involve the transfer of genetic material into cells to reverse an abnormal condition or induce a new trait. Depending on the underlying genetic problem, various strategies such as addition, edition (repair), and deletion/knockout (inactivation) could be used. Sometimes gene therapy is used to add a normal and functional copy of an allele to increase gene expression, such as adding a normal human clotting factor IX allele to produce enough factor IX in hemophilia type B. Gene therapy is sometimes used to introduce a modified allele into cells to give them new characteristics, such as CAR (chimeric antigen receptor) structures in CAR-T cells or suicide genes (e.g. thymidine kinase) into cancer cells.

Some gene therapies are intended for vaccination, primarily by introducing a specific antigen to stimulate the immune system. This strategy has gained attention, particularly with the development of the COVID-19 vaccine. Gene therapy is sometimes used to repair or edit a mutation or defective allele, such as the correction of the survival motor neuron 2 (SMN2) gene transcript with an antisense oligonucleotide in spinal muscular atrophy. CRISPR is a valuable tool in this mechanism. Sometimes gene therapy is used for inactivating the abnormal or defective gene, for example, using siRNA (anti-sense oligonucleotides) or CRISPR to degrade TTR mRNA and reduce TTR protein production in the treatment of hereditary transthyretin-mediated amyloidosis [41-44].

Clinical gene therapy

State of the field

There are three main strategies for gene delivery; *in vivo, in vitro,* and *ex vivo*. Though the most direct method is *in vivo* injection, this approach lacks the improved patient safety of *in vitro* and *ex vivo* methods. Systemic delivery is desirable if the target tissue is not directly accessible. However, this method often results in low specificity of gene expression, risks of toxicity due to the high vector concentration required, and potential damage to the function of healthy tissues. Alternatively, matrix-based delivery allows for tissue-specific gene delivery, higher localized loading of DNA or virus, and increased control over the structural microenvironment. Thus far, human *in vivo* clinical trials have introduced adenovirus, AAV,

retrovirus, and herpes simplex virus by intravenous (IV) injection, intra-tissue injection, or lung aerosol.

In contrast, *ex vivo* trials have focused on stable retroviral transduction of rapidly dividing populations such as CD8+ T-cells, hematopoietic stem cells, hepatocytes, and fibroblasts, followed by IV or local re-introduction. At the time of this publication, a search of the NIH Genetic Modification Clinical Research Information System (GeMCRIS) revealed 908 total gene therapy clinical trial entries in the database. At clinicaltrials.gov, a search for interventions with "gene transfer" OR "gene therapy" returned 174 studies, of which 145 are viral-based, with 84 actives, 48 completed, and 7 terminated. This cross-section of results translates to 1605 persons who have participated in this subset of completed gene therapy trials and nearly 5000 total active or anticipated participants, based on each study's documented enrolment since 1990 [45-47].

Treatment of disease

Gene therapy is especially suited for long-term delivery of a transgene to persons with a single genetic deficiency that is not amenable to protein or pharmacokinetic therapy. This was the premise of the first successful gene therapy clinical trials that inserted genes *ex vivo* into CD34+ cells to treat persons with SCID. Amazingly, persistence of the adenosine deaminase (ADA) transgene was noted in peripheral blood leukocytes 12 years post-therapy without adverse events. Since 1990, clinical treatment of genetic diseases - including cystic fibrosis, hemophilia, Leber congenital amaurosis, muscular dystrophy, ornithine transcarbamylase deficiency, Pompe disease, and Gaucher's disease - has been attempted, with promising documented success. Following the SCID trials, treatment of cystic fibrosis by re-introduction of the cystic fibrosis transmembrane regulator (CFTR) chloride ion channel to lung epithelial cells was highly targeted and was the first use of rAAV in humans. However, like many other *in vivo* and *ex vivo* clinical trials, transduction efficiency was generally insufficient to improve clinical parameters significantly. Apart from SCID, the most promising documented results for genetic deficiency correction have been the replacement of factor IX (F-IX) in hemophilia.

Studies by Avigen Inc. have examined rAAV2-mediated F-IX delivery to the liver. In dogs, therapeutic levels of F-IX were achieved for multiple years following vector treatment. In humans, delivery of rAAV2.F-IX through the hepatic artery achieved therapeutic levels of F-IX expression for approximately 8 weeks. It appears that cell-mediated immunity to the rAAV2 capsid limits expression in humans. Thus, immunomodulation and capsid engineering may make F-IX therapy a near-future reality. Gene therapy is also highly desired for the treatment of neurologic and other chronic disease. Clinical trials have been implemented and/or completed for the treatment of HIV/AIDS, arthritis, angina pectoris, solid tumours, Parkinson's disease, Huntington's disease, Alzheimer's disease, Batten disease, Canavan disease, and familial hypercholesterolemia. Despite the many hurdles, most clinical trials are progressing steadily, with treatments for angina pectoris, prostate cancer, non-small-cell lung cancer, and head and neck cancer now entering phase-III clinical trials [48,49].

Prospects and challenges

Since the beginning of human gene therapy in 1990, nearly 1000 clinical trials have been initiated. Patient follow-up for as much as 18 years post-gene transfer has been generally positive, with isolated tragedy. It is encouraging that many gene therapy trials for single-gene and complex disorders are now complete, vector selection and design strategies have significantly improved, and a safety profile is nearly established, as evidenced by the many current phase III clinical trials. Though strategies such as *ex vivo* transduction of cells with integrating retrovirus are promising, and early success led to high hopes, it is essential to keep our expectations of gene therapy realistic, because future development will require slow, stepwise progress. As we near the 20-year mark for gene therapy and begin its integration with craniofacial engineering, our focus must evolve to include expansion of placebo-controlled clinical trials, development of targeted vectors to increase transduction efficiency and to overcome the immune response, and consideration of the concept of 'genotoxicity' testing as a fundamental feature of gene therapy research [9,50].

Future aspects of gene therapy

- ✓ Nanotechnology + gene therapy yields treatment to torpedo cancer. March, 2009. The School of Pharmacy in London is testing a treatment in mice, which delivers genes wrapped in nanoparticles to cancer cells to target and destroy hard-to-reach cancer cells.
- ✓ Results of world's first gene therapy for inherited blindness show sight improvement. 28 April 2008. UK researchers from the UCL Institute of Ophthalmology and Moorfield's Eye Hospital NIHR Biomedical Research Centre have announced results from the world's first clinical trial to test a revolutionary gene therapy treatment for a type of inherited blindness.
- ✓ Researchers at the National Cancer Institute (NCI), part of the National Institutes of Health, successfully reengineer immune cells, called lymphocytes, to target and attack cancer cells in patients with advanced metastatic melanoma. This is the first time that gene therapy is used to successfully treat cancer in humans.
- ✓ Gene therapy is effectively used to treat two adult patients for a disease affecting non-lymphocytic white blood cells called myeloid cells. Myeloid disorders are common and include a variety of bone marrow failure syndromes, such as acute myeloid leukemia. The study is the first to show that gene therapy can cure diseases of the myeloid system.
- ✓ University of California, Los Angeles, research team gets genes into the brain using liposomes coated in a polymer call polyethylene glycol (PEG). The transfer of genes into the brain is a significant achievement because viral vectors are too big to get across the "blood-brain barrier." This method has potential for treating Parkinson's disease.
- ✓ RNA interference or gene silencing may be a new way to treat Huntington's. Short pieces of double-stranded RNA (short, interfering RNAs or si RNAs) are used by cells to

degrade RNA of a particular sequence. If a si RNA is designed to match the RNA copied from a faulty gene, then the abnormal protein product of that gene will not be produced.

- ✓ New gene therapy approach repairs errors in messenger RNA derived from defective genes. Technique has potential to treat the blood disorder thalassemia, cystic fibrosis, and some cancers.
- ✓ Researchers at Case Western Reserve University and Copernicus Therapeutics are able to create tiny liposomes 25 nanometers across that can carry therapeutic DNA through pores in the nuclear membrane. Sickle cell is successfully treated in mice.

The future of gene therapy holds immense potential, driven by continuous scientific advancements, technological innovations, and collaborative efforts across the medical and scientific communities. As these therapies become more refined and accessible, they will likely revolutionize the treatment landscape for a wide range of diseases, offering new hope and improved quality of life for patients worldwide [12,51].

Applications of gene therapy

Gene therapy is a promising field that involves altering the genetic material within a person's cells to treat or prevent disease. Here are several key applications of gene therapy:

Monogenic disorders

Gene therapy has shown great potential in treating disorders caused by mutations in a single gene. Examples include:

- Cystic fibrosis: Introducing a functional copy of the CFTR gene to correct the defective one.
- Hemophilia: Providing genes that produce clotting factors VIII or IX.
- Sickle cell anemia: Replacing the defective hemoglobin gene with a healthy one.

Cancer treatment

Gene therapy is being used to develop innovative cancer treatments, such as:

- CAR-T cell therapy: Engineering a patient's T cells to recognize and attack cancer cells.
- Oncolytic viruses: Using modified viruses that selectively infect and kill cancer cells while stimulating an anti-tumor immune response.

Cardiovascular diseases

Gene therapy aims to address heart conditions by:

- Angiogenesis: Delivering genes that promote blood vessel growth in patients with ischemic heart disease.
- Heart failure: Introducing genes that improve heart muscle function or slow down heart muscle degeneration.

Neurological disorders

Gene therapy offers potential treatments for several neurological conditions, such as:

- Parkinson's Disease: Delivering genes that produce dopamine or neuroprotective factors.
- Spinal Muscular Atrophy (SMA): Using viral vectors to deliver a functional copy of the SMN1 gene.

- Huntington's Disease: Silencing or editing the mutated HTT gene to prevent its harmful effects.

Ophthalmic disorders

Several eye diseases are targeted by gene therapy, including:

- Leber's Congenital Amaurosis (LCA): Introducing a healthy copy of the RPE65 gene to restore vision.
- Age-Related Macular Degeneration (AMD): Delivering genes that inhibit factors causing blood vessel overgrowth and leakage.

Infectious diseases

Gene therapy can enhance immune responses or directly target pathogens:

- HIV: Editing CCR5 genes in T cells to make them resistant to HIV infection.
- Hepatitis B and C: Using gene editing tools to eliminate viral DNA from infected cells.

Musculoskeletal disorders

Gene therapy is being explored for conditions affecting muscles and bones:

- Duchenne Muscular Dystrophy (DMD): Introducing genes that produce functional dystrophin or its substitutes.
- Osteoarthritis: Delivering genes that promote cartilage regeneration or inhibit inflammatory processes.

Metabolic disorders

Treating metabolic conditions through gene therapy includes:

- Phenylketonuria (PKU): Providing functional genes to break down phenylalanine.
- Glycogen storage diseases: Correcting enzyme deficiencies through gene replacement.

Hematologic disorders

In addition to sickle cell anemia and hemophilia, gene therapy addresses other blood disorders:

- Beta-Thalassemia: Introducing functional beta-globin genes to improve hemoglobin production.
- Severe Combined Immunodeficiency (SCID): Providing genes necessary for immune system development.

Regenerative Medicine

Gene therapy is being combined with stem cell therapy to enhance tissue repair and regeneration:

- Wound Healing: Delivering genes that promote tissue repair and reduce scarring.
- Organ Regeneration: Using gene-modified cells to regenerate damaged organs such as the liver and kidneys.

Gene therapy continues to evolve with advancements in genetic engineering technologies like CRISPR-Cas9, which allow for precise gene editing. These innovations hold promise for expanding the range and effectiveness of gene therapy applications, potentially transforming the treatment landscape for many diseases [9,12,52].

Future directions:

- ❖ Innovation and Research: Continuous research and technological innovation are essential to overcome current limitations and improve the efficacy and safety of gene therapies.
- ❖ Global Collaboration: International collaboration among scientists, regulatory bodies, and healthcare providers can accelerate the development and accessibility of gene therapies.
- ❖ Public Engagement: Educating the public and engaging with stakeholders about the benefits and risks of gene therapy can build trust and support for these advanced treatments.

By addressing these challenges through collaborative efforts and sustained innovation, the full potential of gene therapy can be realized, offering new hope for many currently untreatable conditions.

Pioneer countries in gene therapy:

In the early 1990s, the National Institute of Health in the United States conducted the first successful clinical trial in gene therapy. Even though the United States has had more gene therapy clinical trials than any other country since that time, the Chinese took the lead in approving the first commercially available gene therapy product (Gendicine). In the late 1990s, several countries in Europe were among those that were the first to implement gene therapy. Currently, the United States and China dominate gene therapy clinical trials, accounting for roughly 80% of all trials. Several other countries, including the United Kingdom, France, Spain, and Germany, have excelled in this promising field in recent years. It should be noted that there is an increasing number of clinical trials being conducted with the collaboration of institutes or universities from multiple countries. The number of gene therapy clinical trials with an international contribution doubled from 2010 to 2020 [16,53,54].

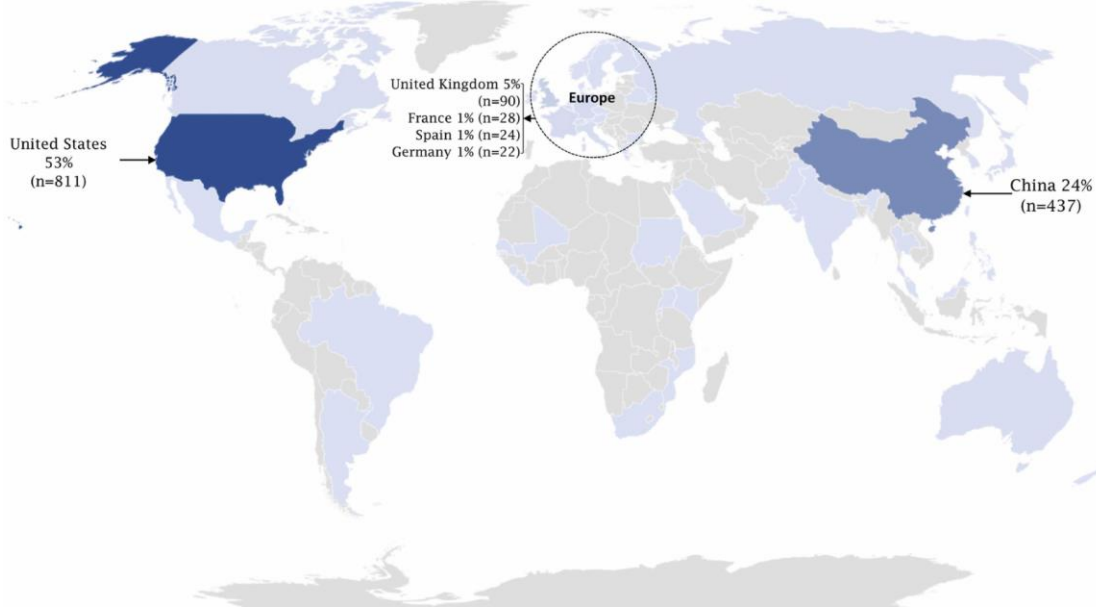


Figure 7: Heat map of the distribution of clinical trials across the world from 2010 to 2020. The contribution part of the countries with the highest number of gene therapy trials is presented in the lower left of the map. The data were shown as country and percentage of the grand total

Conclusion:

It has been about three decades since gene therapy was proposed as a method of treating diseases that were thought to be difficult to cure or incurable. Looking at the trend of gene therapy progressions over the last century, it appears that we have entered a new era, as evidenced by the increasing number of approved gene therapy products in the last decade. This overview covered the major aspects of clinical trial strategies used over the last ten years.

The medical field is surely evolving fast and toward the direction of treating diseases previously incurable by the use of genetic manipulations in the form of classical gene therapy by gene addition but also with the advent of designer nucleases by genome editing. Over the past 20 years, significant milestones have been reached in terms of marketing authorization of gene therapy products and real benefit for a large number of patients has been established. However, the field is still in an immature phase, indicating its huge potential for future growth. To that end, researchers should focus early on toward generating true innovative solutions for patients that have the potential to transfer under GMP conditions and are also comparable price wise to the current state of the art. Super expensive solutions, albeit truly innovative in nature, will most certainly face challenges toward achieving proper reimbursement, thereby jeopardizing their eventual availability to patients. It should be emphasized that adoption of poor organization strategies and lack of risk mitigation measures early in the development has the potential to undermine the future success of an otherwise promising strategy or product, specifically in the area of genome editing. If such strategies are adopted early on from researchers, it is possible that previously unforeseen or unanticipated obstacles on the path to approval, often taking decades to address, will be omitted, increasing the wider applicability of genetic therapies, and unlocking their true potential.

Examining the trends of strategies employed in successful clinical trials provides valuable information for future investigations, improved study designs, and practical policy-making by pharmaceutical companies and gene therapy. So, we can say that gene therapy has a great future ahead.

References:

1. Anderson, W. F. (1984). Prospects for human gene therapy. *Science*, *226*(4672), 401–409.
2. Auton, C. W. (1998). Nuclear import of polypeptides, polynucleotides, and supramolecular complexes. *Advanced Drug Delivery Reviews*, *34*(1), 51–64.
3. Brown, M. D., Schätzlein, A. G., & Uchegbu, I. F. (2001). Gene delivery with synthetic (non-viral) carriers. *International Journal of Pharmaceutics*, *229*(1-2), 1–21.
4. Dunbar, C. E., High, K. A., Joung, J. K., Kohn, D. B., Ozawa, K., & Sadelain, M. (2018). Gene therapy comes of age. *Science*, *359*(6372), 175–179.
5. El-Aneed, A. (2004). An overview of current delivery systems in cancer gene therapy. *Journal of Controlled Release*, *94*(1), 1–14.
6. Gao, X., & Huang, L. (1996). Potentiation of cationic liposome-mediated gene delivery by polycations. *Biochemistry*, *35*(3), 1027–1036.

7. Gericke, N. M., & Hagberg, M. (2006). Definition of historical models of gene function and their relation to students' understanding of genetics. *Science & Education*, *16*(7-8), 849–881.
8. Henderson, M. L., Zieba, J. K., Li, X., Campbell, D. B., Williams, M. R., Vogt, D. L., ... & Edgerly, Y. M. (2024). Gene therapy for genetic syndromes: Understanding the current state to guide future care. *BioTech*, *13*(1), 1–19.
9. Hermonat, P. L., Quirk, J. G., Bishop, B. M., & Han, L. (1997). The packaging capacity of adeno-associated virus (AAV) and the potential for wild-type-plus AAV gene therapy vectors. *FEBS Letters*, *407*(1), 78–84.
10. Horn, P. A., Morris, J. C., Neff, T., & Kiem, H. P. (2004). Stem cell gene transfer—efficacy and safety in large animal studies. *Molecular Therapy*, *10*(3), 417–431.
11. Ibraheem, D., Elaissari, A., & Fessi, H. (2014). Gene therapy and DNA delivery systems. *International Journal of Pharmaceutics*, *459*(1-2), 70–83.
12. Jafarlou, M., Baradaran, B., Saedi, T. A., Jafarlou, V., Shanehbandi, D., & Maralani, M. (2016). An overview of the history, applications, advantages, disadvantages, and prospects of gene therapy. *Journal of Biological Regulators & Homeostatic Agents*, *30*(2), 315–321.
13. Kumar, A. N., & Damke, S. (2021). A review on gene therapy. *Journal of Pharmaceutical Research International*, *33*(60B), 635–645.
14. Mali, S. (2013). Delivery systems for gene therapy. *Indian Journal of Human Genetics*, *19*(1), 3–8.
15. McCain, J. (2005). The future of gene therapy. *Biotechnology Healthcare*, *2*(3), 52–60.
16. Patil, P. M., Chaudhari, P. D., Sahu, M., & Duragkar, N. J. (2012). Review article on gene therapy. *International Journal of Genetics*, *4*(1), 74–79.
17. Patil, S. R., Al-Zoubi, I. A., Raghuram, P. H., Misra, N., Yadav, N., & Alam, M. K. (2018). Gene therapy: A comprehensive review. *International Medical Journal*, *25*(6), 361–364.
18. Phillips, A. J. (2001). The challenge of gene therapy and DNA delivery. *Journal of Pharmacy and Pharmacology*, *53*(9), 1169–1174.
19. Wang, D., Tai, P. W. L., & Gao, G. (2019). Adeno-associated virus vector as a platform for gene therapy delivery. *Nature Reviews Drug Discovery*, *18*(5), 358–378.
20. Wang, L., Liu, G., Zheng, L., Long, H., & Liu, Y. (2023). A new era of gene and cell therapy for cancer: A narrative review. *Annals of Translational Medicine*, *11*(9), 321.
21. Wirth, T., Parker, N., & Ylä-Herttuala, S. (2013). History of gene therapy. *Gene*, *525*(2), 162–169.
22. Woods, N. B., Bottero, V., Schmidt, M., von Kalle, C., & Verma, I. M. (2006). Gene therapy: Therapeutic gene causing lymphoma. *Nature*, *440*(7088), 708.
23. Wrobel, I., & Collins, D. (1995). Fusion of cationic liposomes with mammalian cells occurs after endocytosis. *Biochimica et Biophysica Acta*, *1235*(2), 296–304.

24. Akki, R., Ramya, M. G., & Vardhani, N. K. (2019). A review article on gene therapy. *Journal of Drug Delivery and Therapeutics*, *9*(4), 688–692.Razi Soofiyani S, Baradaran B, Lotfipour F, Kazemi T, Mohammadnejad L. Gene therapy, early promises, subsequent problems, and recent breakthroughs. Adv Pharm Bull. 2013; 3(2):249-255.
25. Bank, A. (1996). Human somatic cell gene therapy. *Nature*, *18*(999), 999–1007.
26. Bovolenta, C., Porcellini, S., & Alberici, L. (2013). Therapeutic genes for anti-HIV/AIDS gene therapy. *Current Pharmaceutical Biotechnology*, *14*(5), 488–500.
27. Breda, L., Gambari, R., & Rivella, S. (2009). Gene therapy in thalassemia and hemoglobinopathies. *Mediterranean Journal of Hematology and Infectious Diseases*, *1*(1), e2009008.
28. Bunnell, B. A., & Morgan, R. A. (1998). Gene therapy for infectious diseases. *Clinical Microbiology Reviews*, *11*(1), 42–56.
29. Burney, T. J., & Davies, J. C. (2012). Gene therapy for the treatment of cystic fibrosis. *Applied Clinical Genetics*, *5*, 29–36.
30. Cotrim, A. P., & Baum, B. J. (2008). Gene therapy: Some history, applications, problems, and prospects. *Toxicologic Pathology*, *36*(1), 97–103.
31. Cross, D., & Burmester, J. K. (2006). Gene therapy for cancer treatment: Past, present, and future. *Clinical Medicine & Research*, *4*(3), 218–227.
32. Culver, K. (1994). *Gene therapy—A handbook for physicians*. Mary Ann Liebert, Inc.
33. Dubé, I. D., & Cournoyer, D. (1995). Gene therapy: Here to stay. *CMAJ: Canadian Medical Association Journal*, *152*(10), 1605–1613.
34. Gupta, K., Singh, S., & Garg, K. N. (2015). Gene therapy in dentistry: Tool of genetic engineering revisited. *Archives of Oral Biology*, *60*(3), 439–446.
35. Jafarlou, M., Baradaran, B., Saedi, T. A., Jafarlou, V., Shanehbandi, D., Maralani, M., & Othman, F. (2016). An overview of the history, applications, advantages, disadvantages, and prospects of gene therapy. *Journal of Biological Regulators & Homeostatic Agents*, *30*(2), 315–321.
36. Miller, D. A. (1992). Human gene therapy comes of age. *Nature*, *375*(6529), 455–460.
37. Misra, S. (2013). Human gene therapy: A brief overview of the genetic revolution. *Journal of the Association of Physicians of India*, *61*(2), 127–133.
38. Mulherkar, R. (2001). Gene therapy for cancer. *Current Science*, *81*(5), 555–560.
39. Murphy, S. L., & High, K. A. (2008). Gene therapy for haemophilia. *British Journal of Haematology*, *140*(5), 479–487.
40. Pattee, S. R. (2008). Protections for participants in gene therapy trials: A patient's perspective. *Human Gene Therapy*, *19*(1), 9–10.
41. Prabhakar, A. R., Paul, J. M., & Basappa, N. (2011). Gene therapy and its implications in dentistry. *International Journal of Clinical Pediatric Dentistry*, *4*(2), 85–92.

42. Razi Soofiyani, S., Baradaran, B., Lotfipour, F., Kazemi, T., & Mohammadnejad, L. (2013). Gene therapy: Early promises, subsequent problems, and recent breakthroughs. *Advanced Pharmaceutical Bulletin, 3*(2), 249–255.
43. Robbins, P. D., & Ghivizzani, S. C. (1998). Viral vectors for gene therapy. *Pharmacology & Therapeutics, 80*(1), 35–47.
44. Robbins, P. D., Tahara, H., & Ghivizzani, S. C. (1998). Viral vectors for gene therapy. *Trends in Biotechnology, 16*(1), 35–40.
45. Rochat, T., & Morris, M. A. (2002). Viral vector for gene therapy. *Journal of Aerosol Medicine, 15*(3), 229–235.
46. Scheller, E. L., & Krebsbach, P. H. (2009). Gene therapy: Design and prospects for craniofacial regeneration. *Journal of Dental Research, 88*(7), 585–596.
47. Verma, I. M., & Weitzman, M. D. (2005). Gene therapy: Twenty-first-century medicine. *Annual Review of Biochemistry, 74*(1), 711–738.
48. Walther, W., & Stein, U. (2000). Viral vector for gene transfer: A review of their use in the treatment of human disease. *Drugs, 60*(2), 249–271.
49. Wang, D., Wang, K., & Cai, Y. (2020). An overview of development in gene therapeutics in China. *Gene Therapy, 27*(7-8), 338–348.
50. Wilkinson, G. W., & Borysiewicz, L. K. (1995). Gene therapy and viral vaccination: The interface. *British Medical Bulletin, 51*(1), 205–216.

HISTOCHEMICAL STUDIES OF *MORINGA OLEIFERA* LAM SEED KERNELS

Sakthi Priyadarsini S*, Nandhini P, Robinson R,
Sathish Kumar K, Suryansh Agarwal, Pavan Kumar NR and Kamaraj R
*Department of Pharmacognosy,
SRM College of Pharmacy, Faculty of Medicine and Health Sciences,
SRM Institute of Science & Technology, Kattankulathur-603203, Tamil Nadu, India
*Corresponding author E-mail: sakthips1@srmist.edu.in

Abstract:

Moringa oleifera Lam, is one such wonderful plant belonging to the family of Moringaceae, widely cultivated for its distinctive habit and foliage in tropical and subtropical reasons. This plant is widely used as nutritional herb and contains valuable pharmacological action like anti-asthmatic, anti-diabetic, hepatoprotective, anti-inflammatory, anti-fertility, anti-cancer, anti-microbial, anti-oxidant, anti-ulcer, anti-allergic, cardiovascular, wound healing, analgesic, anti-pyretic, anti-oxidant. In the present study the morphological, microscopical and histochemical analysis of seed kernels of Moringa was carried out. Histochemical studies were observed on seed kernal of *Moringa oleifera*, the presence of cell inclusions.

Introduction:

Moringa oleifera Lam. is known as the "magic tree" since all of its parts can be utilized to cure a variety of illnesses and used as eatables. It is a member of the Moringaceae family. The beautiful, tiny, deciduous *Moringa oleifera* tree has long, papery-winged seeds and sparse, tripinnate compound leaves. It also has loose axillary panicles of flowers. It's commonly referred to as Shevga, Drumstick, Shobhanjana, etc., [1]. The other species in the genus *Moringa* are *Moringa rivae Chiov* from Kenya and Ethiopia, and *Moringa arborea Verdc.* from Kenya. *Moringa stenopetala Cufod.*, native to Ethiopia and Kenya; *Moringa borziana Mattei*, native to Somalia and Kenya; *Moringa oleifera Lam*. from Sub-Himalayan tracts of India subcontinent*; Moringa longituba Engl*. from Kenya and Somalia; and *Moringa concanensis Dalzell and A. Gibson* from Sub-Himalayan tracts of India subcontinent [2].

Materials and Methods:

Macroscopical studies

Macroscopical characteristics including the study of organoleptic characters and morphological features of seed kernel of *Moringa oleifera* Lam., were studied.

Microscopical studies

Microscopic description of tissues after sectioning and staining was supplemented with micrographs wherever necessary. Photographs of different magnifications were taken with Nikon lab photo 2 microscopic units. For normal observations bright field was used. For the study of crystals and lignified cells, polarized light was employed. Since, these structures have birefringent property under polarized light they appear bright against dark background.

Magnifications of the figures are indicated by the scale – bars. Descriptive terms of the anatomical features are as given in the standard anatomy books [3-5].

Powder microscopical studies

The shade dried powdered seed kernels were used for powder microscopic analysis. The organoleptic characters were observed and to identify the different characteristic features various staining reagents were used. Powder was stained with 1% phloroglucinol in 90 % ethanol, conc. HCl, glycerine and observed through microscope. All the lignified cells-stained pink colour [6].

Histochemical analysis

Temporary and permanent mounts of sections were employed for the test of histochemical studies. For the histochemical studied free hand sections of the organs to be studies, were taken and treated the respective reagent to localize the phytoconstituents, viz. starch, protein, tannin, saponin, fat, glucosides and alkaloids.

1) Starch - 0.3 g of iodine and 1.5 g of potassium iodide were dissolved in 100 ml of distilled water. A drop of the solution was added on the section, washed with water and observed under microscope.

2) Protein -The section was washed with 60% alcohol and few drops of aqueous Fecl3 were added. Blue colour indicates the presence of proteins.

3) Tannin -Sections were treated with dilute acidic Fecl3 solution (0.5% to 1 % of ferric chloride in 0.1 N HCL); mounted in clove oil. Blue green will be observed under microscope for the presence of tannins.

4) Saponins- Sections were placed directly in one drop of concentration H2So4 on a slide, which gives a characteristic sequence of colour reactions, beginning immediately with yellow, changing to red within 30 minutes and finally becoming violet or blue green in a short time. To determine localization of the saponin, sections were put in saturation barium hydroxide solution for about 24 hours. Sections were washed with calcium chloride, the placed in potassium dichromate. Yellow colour indicates the presence of saponins.

5) Fat - 0.5 g of dye, Sudan III or Sudan IV was dissolved in 100ml of 70% alcohol. Sections were kept in the stain for 20 minutes, rinsed quickly with 50% alcohol and mounted in glycerine for observations. Blue, red, pink, precipitate indicates the presence of fat.

6) Test for Alkaloids - Transverse sections of the different plants were treated with the following with the following alkaloid reagent.

a) Mayer's Reagent

Potassium mercuric iodide solution; 13.55g of HgCl2 and 50 g of KI, were dissolved in one litre of distilled water. Presence of grey colour in the section reveals the presence of alkaloids.

b) Wagner's Reagent

1gm iodine and 2g potassium iodide were dissolving in 50ml of distilled water. Presence of golden yellow colour reveals the presence of alkaloids [7-9].

Results:

Plant Profile

Source: *Moringa oleifera* Lam

Family: Moringaceae

Common name: Moringa, drumstick

Morphology of the seed kernels Of *Moringa oleifera* Lam

Seeds are round 1 cm in diameter with brownish semi permeable seed hull with three papery wings. Average weight varies from 0.1-0.3 gram per seed (Figure.1).

Macroscopy

Colour: white

Shape: Tear drop shaped

Size: 2-2.5 cm long; 0.4-0.7 cm wide

Odour: odourless

Avg. weight: 0.1-0.3 gram per seed

Dorsal View **Ventral View**

Figure 1: Macroscopy of seed kernels of *Moringa oleifera* Lam.

Microscopy

Transverse section of *Moringa oleifera* Lam., was observed under microscope with the magnification of 100X. The transverse section showed trichomes with endosperm (Figure.2).

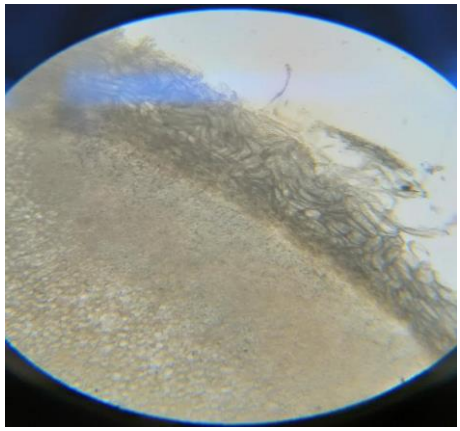
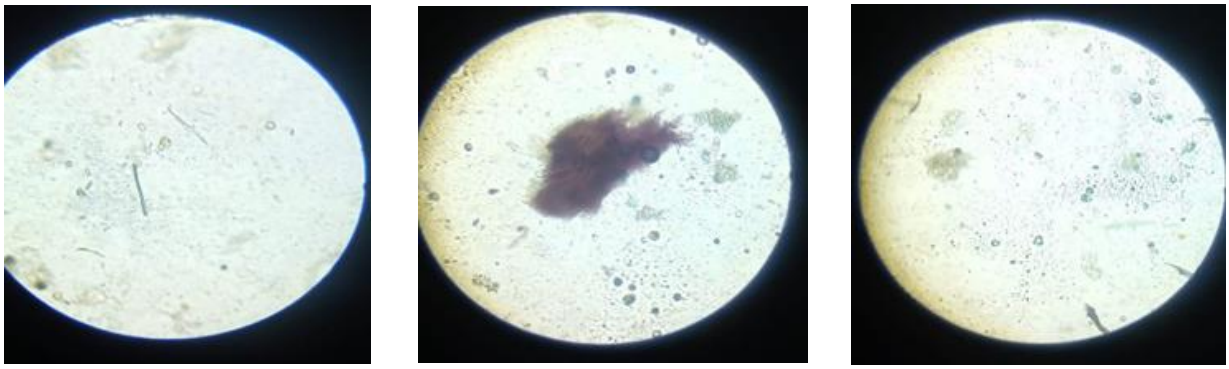


Figure 2: T.S. of seed kernels of *Moringa oleifera* Lam.

Powder microscopy

Powder microscopy was analysed. Trichomes with short stalk, trichome space and endospermic fragments were observed (Figure 3).

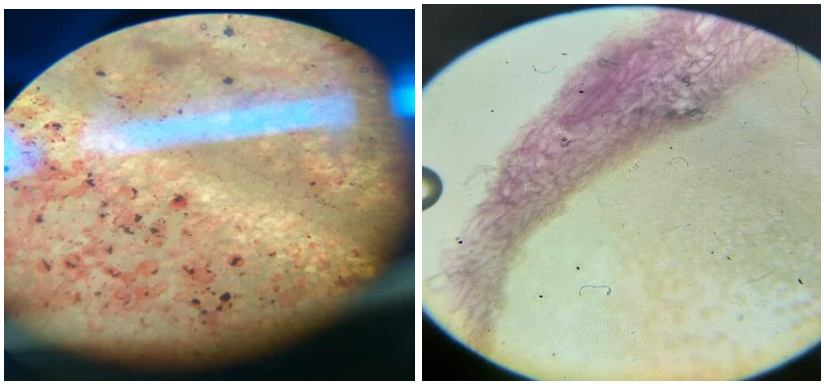


Trichomes **Endospermic fragments** **Trichome bases**

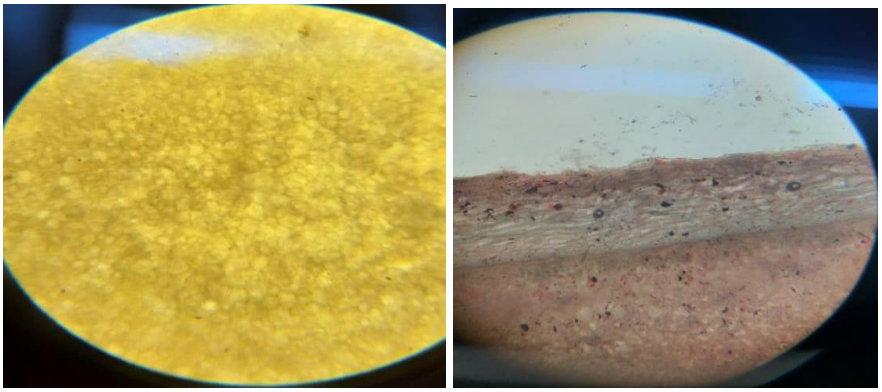
Figure 3: Powder Microscopical characters of seed kernels of *Moringa oleifera* Lam.

Histochemical analysis

Histochemical localization in different tissues of transverse section of leaves of M*oringa oleifera lam*., was studied. The occurrence and distribution of ergastic content are secondary metabolites, viz starch, protein, fat and steroids in seeds are tabulated in Table 1 and displayed in Figure.4.



Fat **Lignin**



Protein **Starch**

Figure 4: Histochemical characters of seed kernels of *Moringa oleifera* Lam.

Table 1: Histochemical analysis of seed kernels of *Moringa oleifera* Lam.

S.No.	Ergastic content	Reagent Used	Observation
1.	Starch	I_2 + KI	Bluish black colour
2.	Protein	Eosin	Blue colour
3.	Tannins	$FeCl_3$	Not detected
4.	Saponin	Con.H_2SO_4	Not detected
5.	Fat	Sudan III	Red colour
6.	Alkaloids	Wagner's reagent	Not detected
7.	Lignin	Conc.HCl+ Phloroglucinol	Pink colour

The macroscopical, microscopical, powder microscopical and histochemical characteristics provide an important aid in pharmacognostical standardization and in the detection of adulterants. Additionally, the physicochemical constants and fluorescence analysis of the pulverised seed kernel of *Moringa oleifera* Lam., were recorded and showed the presence of promising chromophores which may lead to potential therapeutic effect.

Conclusion:

The *Moringa oleifera Lam* seeds microscopy, macroscopy and histochemical analysis were evaluated. The transverse section of seeds trichome with endosperm were observed. In powder microscopy of seeds, trichome space, trichome with short stalk and endospermic fragments were observed. Histochemical studies were observed on seed kernal of *Moringa oleifera*, the presence of cell inclusions. In the food and pharmaceutical industries, precise morphological and chemical characterisation can help with quality control and standardization procedures.

References:

1. Gopalkrishnan, B., Papiya, D., & Chiranjeev, R. (2019). Pharmacognostical studies of *Moringa oleifera* Lam. seeds. *Journal of Pharmacognosy and Phytochemistry*, *8*(6), 741–744.
2. Gandji, K., Chadare, F. J., Idohou, R., Salako, V. K., Assogbadjo, A. E., & Kakaï, R. G. (2018). Status and utilisation of *Moringa oleifera* Lam: A review. *African Crop Science Journal*, *26*(1), 137–156.
3. Johansen, D. A. (1940). *Plant microtechnique*. McGraw Hill Book Co.
4. Sass, J. E. (1940). *Elements of botanical microtechnique*. McGraw Hill Book Co.
5. O'Brien, T. P., Feder, N., & McCull, M. E. (1964). Polychromatic staining of plant cell walls by toluidine blue-O. *Protoplasma, 59*, 364–373.
6. Kokate, C. K. (1986). *Practical pharmacognosy* (1st ed.). Vallabh Prakashan.
7. Gramwell, B. T. (1955). *The modern methods of plant analysis*. Springverlag.
8. Krishnamurthy, K. V. (1998). *Methods in plant histochemistry* (1st ed.).
9. *Harborne, J. B. (1973). Phytochemical methods: A guide to modern techniques of plant analysis (2nd ed.). Chapman and Hall.*.

USE OF ARTIFICIAL INTELLIGENCE IN HEALTHCARE: A REVIEW

Shailendra Bhalchandra Kolhe
Department of Physics
Shivaji Arts, Commerce & Science College Kannad,
Dist.-Chhatrapati Sambhajinagar – 431103
Corresponding author E-mail: kolhe_sb71@yahoo.com

Abstract:

Using algorithms, data, and computing power, artificial intelligence (AI) mimics human intelligence. It enables machines or software to perform tasks that naturally require human intelligence, such as learning, reasoning, problem-solving, perception, and language understanding. AI has greatly advanced in the medical field in recent years, overtaking humans in several medical disciplines. Artificial Intelligence (AI) can prevent, detect, diagnose, and cure a wide range of diseases using analytical approaches. The numerous modern applications of AI in the healthcare industry are discussed in this article.

Keywords: Artificial Intelligence, Drug Creation, Clinical Trial, Healthcare Robotics, Modelling Pandemic.

Introduction:

Artificial intelligence (AI) techniques are being used in various sector and are now being used in the healthcare area. AI is being efficiently utilized in hospitals, clinical laboratories and in research field also. According to current research, AI can perform clinical and medical diagnostic tasks just like a trained clinician. AI can be used in many healthcare applications including detection of disease, delivery of health services and drug discovery. AI can do well in healthcare field but is essential to train system by providing quality data. There are many privacy issues collecting health data of the patient, and sharing those data to user. There are many private sector firms which are collecting and selling those data.

Motivation:

Medical sector will need to move beyond the fundamental biomedical and clinical sciences and updates on emerging diagnosis and treatment trends. It will need to use of information and technology such as Artificial Intelligence to improve the performance and outcomes, and ensuring the mastery of compassionate communication with patients. The motive behind the use of AI in the medical field is due to sophisticated algorithms that are being used to learn various features from a large volume of healthcare data. Obtained observations are analyzed to assist in clinical practices. Also, AI systems are implemented to store information about journals, clinical paper to inform proper patient care, and medical textbooks [1]. Some major applications of AI in healthcare sector are described below.

Applications of artificial intelligence in healthcare sector

Drug creation

Developing pharmaceuticals needs lengthy and costly clinical test methods. Drug discovery can be made cheaper and safer using AI. This technology cannot be applicable in all drug discovery processes. This AI technology was used in Ebola outbreak to redesign medicines in West Africa. AI technology can be used to make drug discovery and development faster [2].

Treatment design

Inclusion of Artificial Intelligence technology in healthcare has made the treatment advanced. Medical images like X-rays, CT scans, MRIs, and ultrasounds can be analyzed and their signs and symptoms can be reliably diagnosed by artificial intelligence. This reduces time span of diagnosis [2].

Managing medical data and records

The administration of patient data collection, storage, and analysis is known as health data management. Administrative data, medical history and treatments, and demographic data are all included in this data. A lot of data is generated in large volumes. It is very important to manage this data. This issue can be tackled using AI technologies by increasing quality of patient care [3]. Natural Language Processing is also important in healthcare for clinical documentation.

Disease progression

Worsening of a disease over time is called as disease progression. It is used to describe chronic and incurable diseases and declination of patient's functional abilities. Information about stage of the disease is vital for employing proper treatment. All this is accomplished using artificial intelligence algorithms that come up with disease models [4].

Clinical trial

Before applying particular treatment to a patient its clinical trial is very important. It evaluates effects of new treatment on human health consequences. Some people voluntarily take part in clinical trials. These trials are carefully designed, reviewed, and finalized, and need to be approved before they can start. People of all ages can take part in clinical trials. These trials are costly and time consuming. AI aided clinical trials produce very accurate results [5].

Healthcare robotics

In healthcare field large number of human resources is needed. Day by day our population is escalating. Hospitals are flooded with patients. There must be helping hand to the health staff. Healthcare robotics is a multidisciplinary discipline that aims to improve medical procedures, help healthcare professionals, and improve patient care by combining robots, healthcare, and artificial intelligence. These robots can help with surgery, monitor patients, and assist with rehabilitation, among other activities. Healthcare robots play vital role in assisting the medical staff. Robots can also help with rehabilitation and surgery [5].

Modelling the pandemic

It involves using mathematical, statistical, and computational tools to simulate the spread of infectious diseases, understand their dynamics, and predict future trends. These models help

public health administrators and policymakers to make informed decisions about interventions, resource allocation, and strategies to ease the influence of the pandemic. In COVID-19 period the whole world suffered a lot. Some people died due to this pandemic. Many researchers worked on this issue to study the situation. Many researchers and companies such as Tata Consultancy Services, KPMG India also developed machine-learning models to predict the severity of the disease and identify at-risk people across the country [6].

Conclusion:

In healthcare it is more important to take proper decision, employ proper technique to cure, treat patients. It requires a large amount of data for more accurate decision, better efficiency and reducing costs. AI has been applied in many parts in the medical field such as managing medical data and records, drug creation, treatment design, disease progression, clinical trial, healthcare robotics etc. By developing a healthy regulatory framework and addressing moral concerns, we can use AI in healthcare.

References:

1. Wartman, S. A., & Combs, C. D. (2018). Medical education must move from the information age to the age of artificial intelligence. Academic Medicine, 93(8), pp. 1107–1109.
2. Deekshaa Khanna (2018). Use of artificial intelligence in healthcare and medicine. International journal of innovations in engineering research and technology, 5(12), pp.21-24.
3. Ekampreet Kaur, Akash bans, Uwom Okereke Eze and Jaskaran Singh (2023). Artificial intelligence in healthcare: a prospective approach. Anveshan: Multidisciplinary Journal of Geeta University, 1 (1), pp.1-12.
4. Kourou, K., Exarchos, K. P., Papaloukas, C., Sakaloglou, P., Exarchos, T., & Fotiadis, D. I. (2021). Applied machine learning in cancer research: A systematic review for patient diagnosis, classification, and prognosis. Computational and Structural Biotechnology Journal, 19, 5546-5555. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.csbj.2021.10.006.
5. Furqan Mulla (2023). Applications of Artificial Intelligence (AI) in Healthcare: Research Paper. International Journal of Science and Research. 12(12), pp.1853-1858. DOI: https://dx.doi.org/10.21275/SR231226113454.
6. Nirupam Bajpai and Manisha Wadhwa (2020). Artificial Intelligence and Healthcare in India. CSD Working Paper Series – Artificial Intelligence and Healthcare in India, pp.1-29.

NOVEL DEVELOPMENTS IN MITOCHONDRIAL DISEASES: FROM MOLECULAR UNDERSTANDING TO POTENTIAL TREATMENTS

Mounika Nerella[1], Lakshmi Chandini Mandepudi[2], Kousar Begum[3], Naveen Pathakala[1], Yaso Deepika Mamidisetti[4] and Narender Boggula*[2]

[1]School of Pharmacy, Anurag University,
Venkatapur, Ghatkesar, Hyderabad, Telangana, India.
[2]Omega College of Pharmacy, Edulabad, Ghatkesar, Hyderabad, Telangana, India.
[3]Malla Reddy Health City, Suraram, Hyderabad, Telangana, India.
[4]School of Allied Healthcare Sciences,
Malla Reddy University, Dulapally, Hyderabad, Telangana, India.
*Corresponding author E-mail: drnarenderboggula@gmail.com

Abstract:

Mitochondria are vital organelles in eukaryotic cells. Mitochondria are double-membraned cytoplasmic organelles that are responsible for the production of energy in eukaryotic cells. Mitochondria are the main site of ATP production via the process of oxidative phosphorylation (OXPHOS). The OXPHOS system consists of five multi-subunit protein complexes (complexes I–V) located in the inner mitochondrial membrane. Mitochondrial diseases are caused by the impairment of mitochondria due to mutations of mitochondrial DNA (mtDNA) or nuclear DNA (nDNA). Mitochondrial disease refers to conditions caused by mitochondrial dysfunction. Due to the distribution of mitochondria in every cell of the body, organ defects and symptoms vary widely. Mitochondrial disease is a challenging area of genetics because two distinct genomes can contribute to disease pathogenesis. It is also challenging clinically because of the myriads of different symptoms and, until recently, a lack of a genetic diagnosis in many patients. The last five years has brought remarkable progress in this area. We provide a brief overview of mitochondrial origin, function, and biology, which are key to understanding the genetic basis of mitochondrial disease. However, the primary purpose of this review is to describe the recent advances related to the diagnosis, clinical approaches, genetic basis, and prevention of mitochondrial disease. The current strategy is to focus on stimulating the biogenesis of mitochondria, anti-oxidants, and cofactors to enhance ATP synthesis. The role of non-pharmaceuticals cannot be underestimated either. The exercise, diet, and environment influence have well-established beneficial outcome in these disorders. Gene therapy holds promise in the future management of these complex disorders. Current therapeutic approaches, future advances and proposed new therapeutic plans will also be discussed.

Keywords: Mitochondria, Oxidative Phosphorylation, Encephalomyopathy, Cellular Respiration, Mitochondrial DNA.

Introduction:

Mitochondria are membrane-bound organelles found in the cytoplasm of eukaryotic cells. They are often referred to as the "powerhouses of the cell" because they generate most of the cell's supply of adenosine triphosphate (ATP), which is used as a source of chemical energy. Mitochondria have a double membrane structure, with the inner membrane being highly folded into structures known as cristae. These organelles are also involved in other important cellular processes such as signaling, cellular differentiation, cell death, and the control of the cell cycle and cell growth. Additionally, mitochondria contain their own small genome and are believed to have originated from an ancient symbiotic relationship between a primitive eukaryotic cell and a prokaryotic organism [1].

Origin of mitochondria

Mitochondria, essential organelles that are present in almost all eukaryotic cells, are thought to have originated from free-living bacteria following a symbiotic event with a host cell approximately two billion years ago. In this hypothesis, known as the endosymbiotic theory, a proteobacterium was engulfed by endocytosis, providing the host with the ability to produce cellular energy in the form of ATP. The resulting double-membrane-bound organelle lacked a nucleus (a consequence of its prokaryotic origin) but contained its own genetic material. Over time, most of this genetic material was either transferred to the host's nuclear genome or lost as a consequence of functional redundancy. The resulting human mitochondrial genome is a double-stranded, circular molecule comprising 16,569 base pairs that was first sequenced more than 35 years ago. This sequencing revealed that only 37 genes remain in the mitochondrial genome: 13 structural subunits required for oxidative phosphorylation, together with 2 mitochondrial rRNAs (12S and 16S) and 22 mitochondrial tRNAs necessary for the synthesis of these subunits [2,3].

Mitochondrial function

Mitochondria are involved in several important cellular processes, including biosynthesis of iron-sulphur clusters, calcium homeostasis, and apoptosis, but the production of cellular ATP by oxidative phosphorylation is their most recognized role. This process requires five multi-subunit protein complexes, four of which make up the mitochondrial respiratory chain (complex I to complex IV) and are involved in transporting electrons through the complexes to the final electron acceptor-molecular oxygen. This transfer of electrons generates a proton gradient across the inner mitochondrial membrane that is harnessed by complex V (also known as ATP synthase) to synthesize ATP. These complexes have long been recognized as discrete entities embedded within the inner mitochondrial membrane, but they are also found as respiratory supercomplexes. The crystal structures of two functional supercomplexes (supercomplexes I and III) and the fully functional respirasome (consisting of complexes I, III, and IV) have recently been elucidated [4,5].

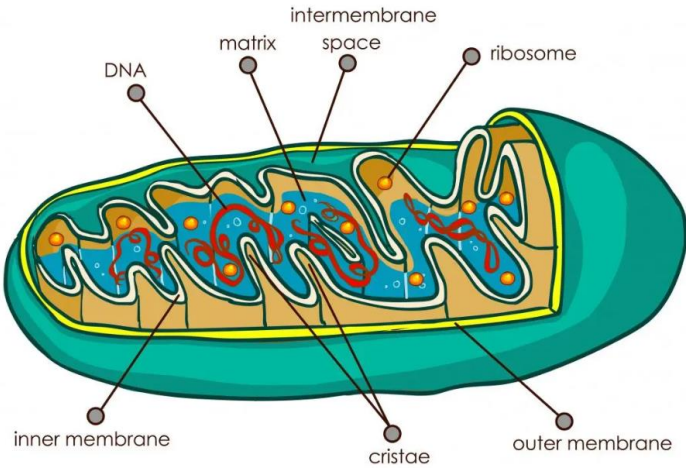


Figure 1: Structure of mitochondria

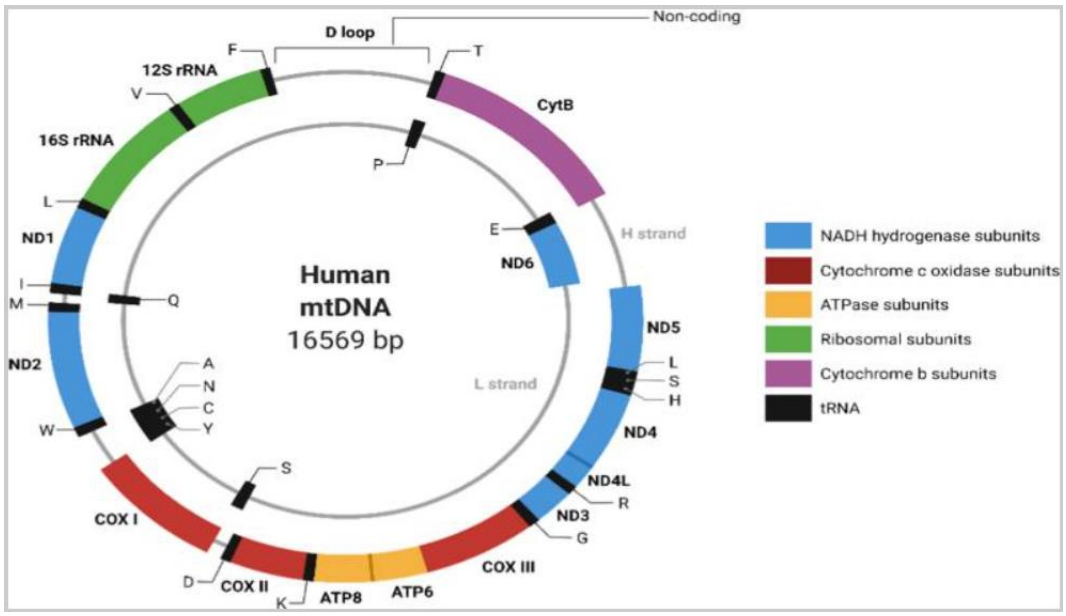


Figure 2: Human mitochondrial DNA. The human mitochondrial genome is organized as double-stranded a light (inner) and a heavy (outer) circular molecule containing 37 genes. 13 of these genes encode one polypeptide subunit, which is involved in the regulation of respiratory chain (RC), while the remaining 24 are necessary for RNA translation mechanism, 2 for making molecules called ribosomal RNAs (rRNAs) and 22 for transfer RNAs (tRNAs)

Mitochondria are vital organelles in eukaryotic cells, often referred to as the "powerhouses" of the cell due to their role in energy production. Here are the key functions of mitochondria:

- **ATP production:** Mitochondria are primarily responsible for generating adenosine triphosphate (ATP), the cell's main energy currency. This is done through oxidative phosphorylation during the process of cellular respiration.

- **Cellular respiration:** Mitochondria carry out aerobic respiration, a process that involves the breakdown of glucose and other nutrients to produce ATP, carbon dioxide, and water. This process includes the Krebs cycle (citric acid cycle) and the electron transport chain.
- **Regulation of metabolic activity:** Mitochondria play a crucial role in regulating the metabolic activities of the cell. They are involved in the metabolism of carbohydrates, lipids, and amino acids.
- **Calcium homeostasis:** Mitochondria help regulate calcium levels within cells by storing and releasing calcium ions as needed. This is important for various cellular processes, including signal transduction and muscle contraction.
- **Apoptosis (Programmed cell death):** Mitochondria are involved in the regulation of apoptosis. They release cytochrome c and other pro-apoptotic factors that activate the caspase cascade, leading to programmed cell death, which is essential for development and tissue homeostasis.
- **Heat production:** In brown adipose tissue, mitochondria generate heat through a process called non-shivering thermogenesis. This is particularly important in newborns and hibernating animals.
- **Synthesis of steroid hormones:** Mitochondria are involved in the biosynthesis of steroid hormones in specialized cells, such as adrenal gland cells, by providing the necessary environment for enzymatic reactions.
- **Oxidative stress response:** Mitochondria produce reactive oxygen species (ROS) as byproducts of electron transport. They also have antioxidant systems to neutralize excess ROS, protecting cells from oxidative damage.
- **Regulation of cellular redox state:** Mitochondria help maintain the balance of reduction and oxidation (redox) states within the cell, which is crucial for various metabolic processes and signaling pathways.
- **Support of immune function:** Mitochondria participate in innate immunity by producing signaling molecules that can influence immune responses and inflammation.

These functions highlight the essential role of mitochondria in maintaining cellular health and overall physiological balance.

Mitochondrial disease

Mitochondrial disease is the collective term for a heterogeneous group of genetic disorders characterized by defective oxidative phosphorylation. These disorders are clinically diverse and can manifest in the neonatal phase, childhood, or adulthood. Mitochondrial disease refers to conditions caused by mitochondrial dysfunction. Due to the distribution of mitochondria in every cell of the body, organ defects and symptoms vary widely. However, there is one clear commonality: the inheritance of mutated DNA that encodes major components of oxidative phosphorylation (OXPHOS), leading to a loss of mitochondrial function. Mitochondria are organelles composed of numerous nucleus-encoded proteins with various roles, as well as 13 self-encoded proteins crucial for OXPHOS, along with 2 self-encoded rRNAs and 22 tRNAs.

Because all mitochondrially encoded proteins play important roles in mitochondria, mutations in coding genes within mitochondria can directly lead to mitochondrial dysfunction.

Unlike genetic disorders associated with nuclear genomes, the replication of mutated mtDNA does not exhibit patterns of Mendelian inheritance due to the independent fusion-fission activity of mitochondria. Mitochondrial DNA-related mitochondrial disease does not require the 100% homoplasmy of mutated DNA in an organism. Despite the heteroplasmic distribution being diverse across individuals and types of diseases, there is considered to be a certain threshold of mtDNA mutation load required to exhibit symptoms of diseases. Correlations between heteroplasmic levels and the expression of symptoms have also been reported in case studies involving a large amount of screening of mitochondrial disease patients. DNA sequencing methods have rapidly advanced, making it easier to find disease-inducing DNA mutations and even distinguish every single mtDNA sequence in a cell. Yet, due to the difficulty of isolating individual mitochondria, there is a greater demand for studies to reveal the ambiguous dynamics of the mitochondrial processing of mtDNA. One thing that is not ambiguous is the notable prevalence of mitochondrial diseases. Therefore, we are facing the need to solve this threatening problem affecting our populations [6-9].

Because mitochondrial diseases involve different types of dysfunctions in mitochondria, approaches for the treatment of mitochondrial diseases also vary. These approaches include replacing the cytoplasm containing defective mitochondria with healthy mitochondria containing cytoplasm through oocyte spindle transfer, targeting the underlying cause of mitochondrial disease by converting pathogenic point-mutated mtDNA to normal mtDNA, the use of chemical compounds to stimulate electron transfer chain in OXPHOS by bypassing the malfunctioning complex, and even researching phenolic compounds in our diet that have shown potential for reducing ROS through their antioxidant activity.

Mitochondrial defect also affects the closely associated protein, AMPK. This, in turn, impacts the AMPK's protein activity of regulating antitumor immunity. In terms of this, research is being conducted to induce OXPHOS depression in mitochondria, which affects AMPK and further promotes cancer immunotherapy. Studies to control the population of dysfunctional mitochondria by utilizing the involvement of AMPK protein in mitochondrial biogenesis are also in progress. In the context of mitochondria-related autophagic processes, which involve the regulation of dysfunctional mitochondria populations, this approach holds the potential for treating mitochondrial diseases and is actively being investigated.

Countless studies are being conducted in the field of mitochondrial disease, but only a few studies have been completed with considerable efficiency in terms of restoring defective mitochondria, and an even more limited portion of groups have reached clinical trials with their treatments. This review focuses on treatments that are currently undergoing clinical trials for mitochondrial disease, with initial explanations of several mitochondrial diseases [9-11].

Mitochondrial diseases are a group of disorders caused by dysfunctional mitochondria, the organelles that generate energy for the cell. These diseases can affect various parts of the body, often those with high energy demands like the brain, heart, muscles, and liver. They can be

caused by mutations in mitochondrial DNA (mtDNA) or nuclear DNA (nDNA) that affect mitochondrial function. Some common mitochondrial diseases include:

- **Leber's Hereditary Optic Neuropathy (LHON):** This condition leads to sudden vision loss due to the death of cells in the optic nerve.
- **Mitochondrial Myopathy:** This affects muscle function, causing muscle weakness, exercise intolerance, and sometimes muscle pain and cramps.
- **Mitochondrial Encephalomyopathy, Lactic Acidosis, and Stroke-like episodes (MELAS):** This syndrome can cause strokes, seizures, muscle weakness, and elevated levels of lactic acid in the body.
- **Myoclonic Epilepsy with Ragged Red Fibers (MERRF):** Characterized by myoclonus (muscle jerks), epilepsy, ataxia (lack of coordination), and ragged-red fibers seen in muscle biopsies.
- **Neuropathy, Ataxia, and Retinitis Pigmentosa (NARP):** This condition includes symptoms like peripheral neuropathy, balance and coordination problems (ataxia), and vision loss due to retinitis pigmentosa.
- **Kearns-Sayre Syndrome (KSS):** Affects the eyes with symptoms like progressive external ophthalmoplegia (weakness of the eye muscles) and pigmentary retinopathy. It can also cause heart problems, muscle weakness, and other systemic issues.
- **Chronic Progressive External Ophthalmoplegia (CPEO):** Leads to a gradual paralysis of the eye muscles, causing drooping eyelids (ptosis) and difficulty moving the eyes.

Treatment for mitochondrial diseases is challenging and primarily focuses on managing symptoms and slowing disease progression. This may include physical therapy, medications to manage symptoms, dietary supplements like coenzyme Q_{10}, and in some cases, experimental therapies. Genetic counseling is also recommended for affected families.

Features of mitochondrial disease

One notable aspect of mitochondrial disease is that, despite its diverse causes at the cellular level, symptoms are generally expressed through mitochondrial dysfunction. Consequently, although the main symptoms of mitochondrial disease vary depending on the type of disease, they appear to share common symptoms in the broader category of encephalomyopathy. Therefore, it is important to identify the defective mechanisms at the cellular level in order to understand the causes of mitochondrial disease.

Mitochondria are subcellular organelles known for producing ATP, which is used for cellular energy, through OXPHOS. Mitochondrial disease occurs when there are defects in the proteins involved in OXPHOS or other proteins related to mitochondrial function. Researchers have shown a correlation between mitochondrial performance and high-energy demanding cells, and mitochondrial proteome also varies depending on the tissue. Therefore, mitochondrial dysfunction can be regarded as a deficiency in cellular energy, which leads to energy deficiency in nerve cells or myocytes, appearing as the main cause of mitochondrial disease. However, studies on patients with mitochondrial disease have reported that the main cause is often associated with lactic acidosis. Dysfunction in the electron transport chain leads to a decrease in

ATP production, and low ATP level further increase glycolysis, resulting in an overproduction of pyruvate, which can be further reduced and converted to lactate**.**

Mitochondrial proteins can be encoded by both nuclear DNA and mtDNA, thus mitochondrial disease can also result from mutations in either or both types of DNA. The inheritance of mitochondrial diseases caused by nuclear DNA mutation can be easily identified by examining family histories, as the symptoms follow the rules of Mendelian inheritance. However, mitochondria have their own autonomous process of duplication and DNA replication. Therefore, mutated mtDNA can exist in a state of heteroplasmy, leading to cellular dysfunction and an increase in the expression of mitochondrial disease symptoms. The manifestation of these symptoms is expected to depend on a certain threshold of heteroplasmy, which varies depending on the type of disease and the individual carrying the mutated mtDNA. Case studies have shown that the amount of mutated mtDNA can vary among patients with the same symptoms, and higher levels of heteroplasmy do not always correlate with the severity of symptoms. Even in the case of monozygotic twins with mitochondrial disease, different symptoms can be observed, suggesting that there are additional factors beyond DNA mutations that contribute to the expression of symptoms.

In case studies involving large amounts of patient data, a convincing correlation was found between heteroplasmy level and the age of onset, but no correlation was observed between symptoms. Due to the elusive nature of mitochondrial pathologies, it is important to understand the mechanisms and causes that trigger them [12-15].

Mitochondrial diseases are a group of disorders caused by dysfunctional mitochondria; the organelles responsible for producing energy in cells. These diseases can affect multiple systems in the body, as mitochondria are present in nearly all cell types. Here are some key features and symptoms associated with mitochondrial diseases:

General features:

- Variable presentation: Symptoms can vary widely among individuals, even within the same family, due to differences in the number and distribution of affected mitochondria in different tissues.
- Multisystem involvement: Mitochondrial diseases can affect multiple organ systems, often involving: Nervous system (central and peripheral), muscles, heart, liver, kidneys, endocrine system, eyes and ears.
- Progressive nature: Symptoms often worsen over time as more cells become affected.

Common symptoms:

- Neurological symptoms: Seizures, developmental delays, stroke-like episodes, ataxia (loss of coordination), neuropathy (nerve damage).
- Muscular symptoms: Muscle weakness, exercise intolerance, myopathy (muscle disease).
- Cardiac symptoms: Cardiomyopathy (heart muscle disease), arrhythmias (irregular heartbeats).
- Gastrointestinal symptoms: Feeding difficulties, gastroesophageal reflux, constipation.
- Endocrine symptoms: Diabetes, growth hormone deficiency.

- Ophthalmological symptoms: Ptosis (drooping eyelids), optic atrophy (damage to the optic nerve), retinopathy (damage to the retina).
- Auditory symptoms: Sensorineural hearing loss.
- Metabolic symptoms: Lactic acidosis (buildup of lactic acid), hypoglycemia (low blood sugar).

Types of mitochondrial disease

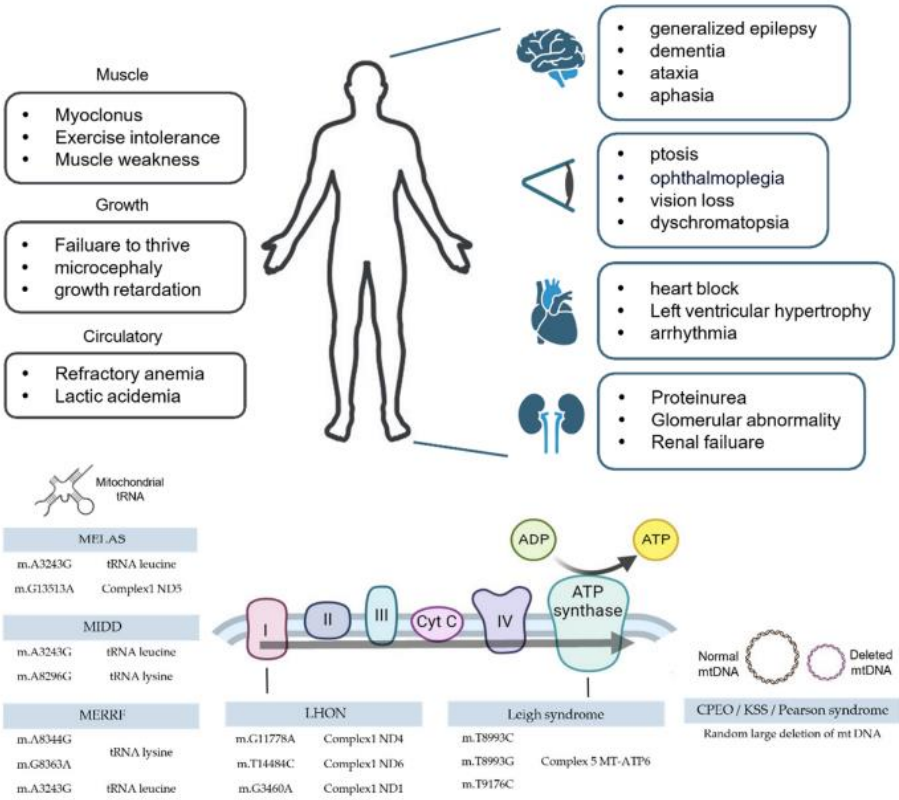


Figure 3: Symptoms and causes of mitochondrial diseases. The upper side of the figure displays commonly diagnosed symptoms, with symptoms affecting the entire body placed on the left and organ-specific symptoms on the right. As mitochondrial diseases have various causes, only well-known pathogenic mtDNA mutations are listed. A line and brief illustration indicate a correlation between pathogenic mutations and the affected sites

Since mitochondrial diseases tend to have numerous causes beyond their prominent cause, this paper only focused on major types of disease-causing mutations. The description of mitochondrial disease with notable symptoms and case studies is given above (Figure 3) [15].

Clinical features

The childhood-onset of mitochondrial diseases have mainly resulted from recessive nDNA or mutations in mtDNA that exist at high levels of mtDNA heteroplasmy. As mitochondrial diseases have diverse phenotypes and usually cause multi-organs dysfunction, the clinical features and diagnosis are relatively complicated. Moreover, the tenuous link between the observed clinical phenotype and the genotype in mitochondrial disease patients complicates the accurate diagnosis. The pediatric-onset of mitochondrial disorders have several clinical

features that are regularly observed, such as fatigue, vomiting, failure to thrive, encephalopathy, seizures, hypotonia, exercise intolerance and dysautonomia, as illustrated in Figure 4 [16,17].

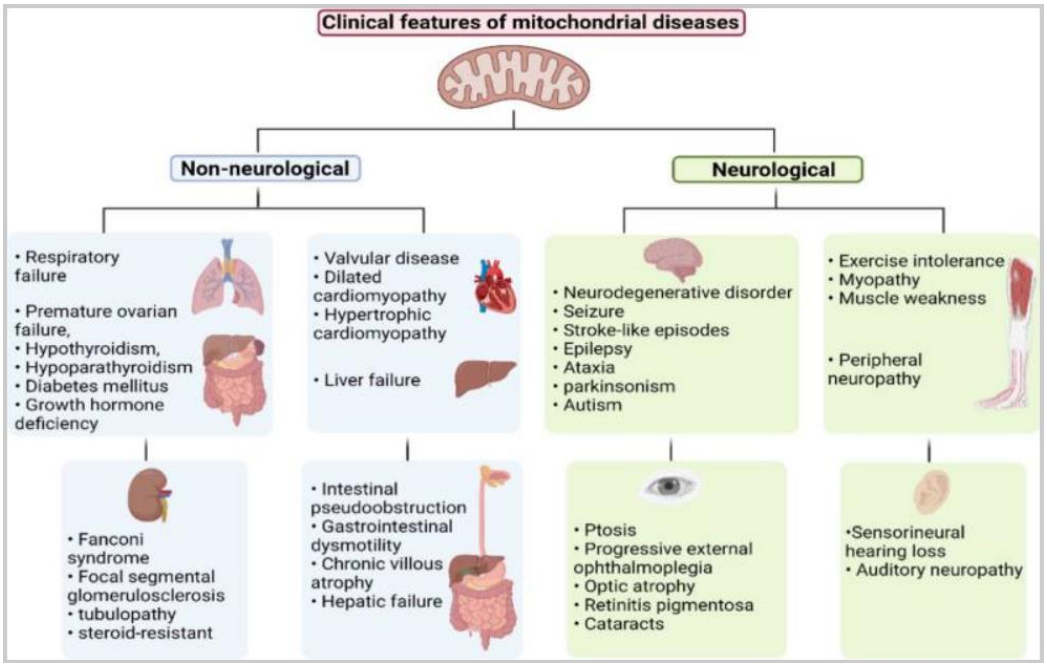


Figure 4: Schematic presentation of clinical features of mitochondrial diseases. The clinical features of mitochondrial diseases vary between patients and have non-neurological or neurological characteristics, commonly involving two or more organ systems causing dysfunction of any organ or tissue

Clinical diagnosis of mitochondrial diseases

Mitochondrial diseases can be evaluated through different diagnostic testing, such as blood, urine, molecular genetics and tissue biopsy analyses. To confirm the mitochondrial disease's diagnosis, several conventional biomarkers could be used, which are specific enzymes, anaerobic glucose metabolism and products or metabolic intermediates (i.e., alanine, lactate, creatine kinase, pyruvate, deoxyuridine, thymidine, acylcarnitines and organic acids). It is beneficial to conduct metabolic screening analysis in urine and blood samples to detect mitochondrial dysfunctions in their early stages. Different diagnostic biochemical screening tests might also be used that include complete blood count, urine organic acid analysis, urine amino acid analysis, hormone screening, hemoglobin A1C, comprehensive chemistry panel, blood lactate and pyruvate, creatine kinase, ammonia and carnitine, acylcarnitine and lipoprotein profile. Additional biochemical screening tests can be performed when needed to confirm the mitochondrial disorder.

One of the most valuable biomarkers in the diagnosis of mitochondrial disease is the metabolic fingerprints of OXPHOS deficiency. For instance, it has been demonstrated that the fibroblast growth factor 21 (FGF21) level is a potential biomarker for muscle-manifesting mitochondrial disease. The elevated growth-differentiation factor 15 (GDF15) has been detected in blood samples collected from mitochondrial dysfunction patients and is considered another potential biomarker. The measurement of abnormal quantities of organic acids in urine may be used as a diagnostic tool to detect several mitochondrial disorders in children, such as

methylmalonic aciduria (caused by mutations in SUCLA2 and SUCLG1), and 3-methylglutaconic aciduria (caused by mutations in TAZ, TMEM70 and SERAC1).

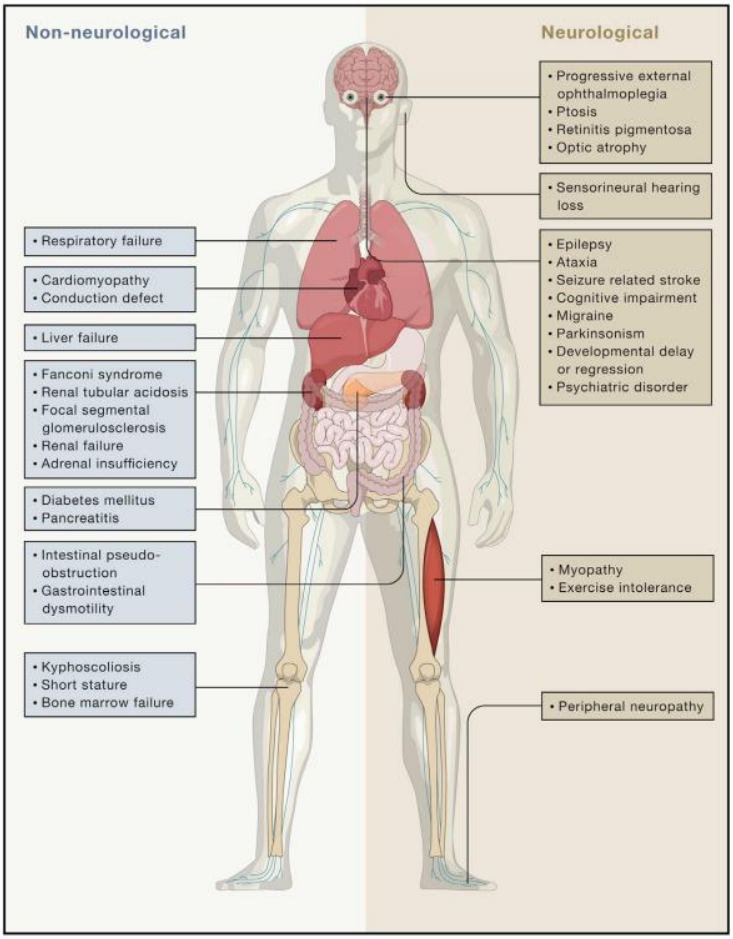


Figure 5: Clinical features of mitochondrial disease. Mitochondrial dysfunction can cause a range of neurological and non-neurological symptoms. The spectrum of tissues involved varies between the mutation (mtDNA or nDNA), heteroplasmy, and age of onset and thus makes it difficult to predict disease progression

Molecular genetic testing is an essential diagnostic tool that helps identify the molecular etiology that caused the mitochondrial dysfunction; hence, it could improve therapeutic outcomes. The first-line molecular diagnostic test of mitochondrial dysfunction is the whole-exome sequencing that includes mtDNA sequencing in proband, parental or family members. This is a crucial test to identify de novo dominant mutations in the affected individuals and increase the interpretation accuracy of variant pathogenicity. The next-generation sequencing (NGS) of mtDNA and its content in the diseased tissues may be considered the most successful approach to identifying the primary mitochondrial diseases. Biotin and thiamine responsive basal ganglia disease (SLC19A3) and riboflavin transport deficiencies (SLC52A2 or SLC52A3) were reported to have phenotypic overlap with mitochondrial dysfunctions [18-21].

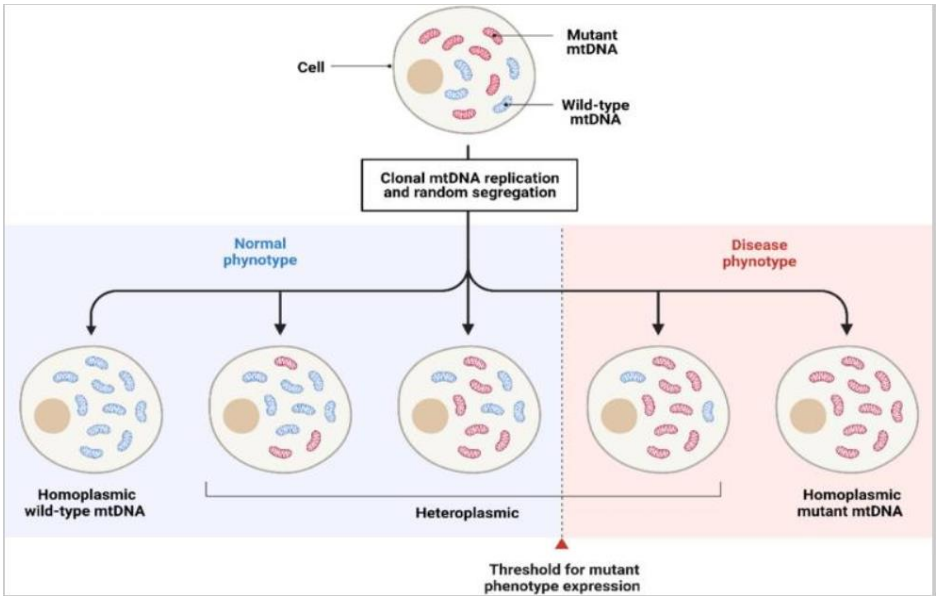


Figure 6: Schematic presentation of homoplasmic and heteroplasmic mitochondrial DNA. A single cell may obtain wild type copies of mtDNA (homoplasmy) or a mixture of mutant and wild-type mtDNA (heteroplasmy). The proportion of mutant mtDNA copies determines the penetrance and severity of phenotype expression, and the cell will be affected if it exceeds a specific limit (threshold)

Clinical approach with treatments involving chemical compounds

Intracellular interactions of disease-targeting molecules often affect various cellular mechanisms in addition to their primary target pathway. As a result, diverse clinical approaches can be conducted using the same treatment. This review specifically focuses on treatments aimed at rescuing dysfunctional mitochondria that are currently undergoing trials (Table 1, Figure 7) [8,22,23].

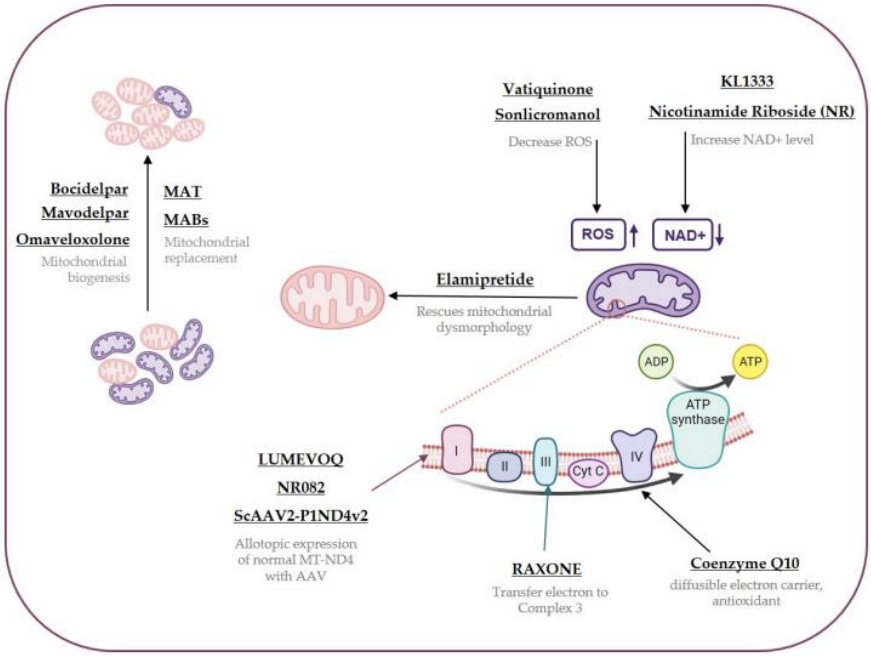


Figure 7: Interactions of treatments for mitochondrial diseases. Targeting points of drugs are indicated with arrows with brief illustrations

Table 1: Drugs for treating mitochondrial diseases

Target disease	Treatment	Mechanism
Mitochondrial diseases	Coenzyme Q_{10}	Diffusible electron carrier of the mitochondrial respiratory chain, lipid peroxidation interfering antioxidants
LHON (Leber hereditary optic neuropathy)	RAXONE (Idebenone)	Transfer electrons directly to complex III by bypassing malfunctional complex
Mitochondrial myopathy disorder	Nicotinamide Riboside (NR)	Precursor of Nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide (NAD^+); increasing intracellular NAD^+ level increases mitochondrial function and mitochondrial number
Friedreich ataxia, Mitochondrial disease with refractory epilepsy, Mitochondrial respiratory chain diseases	Vatiquinone (EPI-743, PTC-743)	Inhibiting 15-lipoxygenase (15-LO), leads to increased GSH levels and decreased oxidized GSH
Primary mitochondrial myopathy	Bocidelpar (ASP0367)	Agonist of PPAR-δ, enhances fatty acid oxidation, mitochondrial respiration and oxidative metabolism, which further leads to increment of skeletal muscle genes expression
mtDNA depletion disease (Pearson syndrome)	Mitochondrial augmentation	Replacement of dysfunctional mitochondria with healthy-exogenous donor mitochondria using *in vitro* uptake
Friedreich's ataxia	Skyclarys (Omaveloxolone)	Nrf_2 degradation inhibitor; upregulates the expression of antioxidant gene, downregulates the expression of pro-inflammatory genes, and enhances mitochondrial biogenesis

Analogues of CoQ, for instance, idebenone, mitoquinone and short-chain CoQ_{10} with improved pharmaceutical and pharmacological properties were developed to boost the electron transport chain of mitochondria and evaluated clinically for their therapeutic efficacy. These natural and synthetic quinones demonstrated potential anti-oxidant activities against toxic metabolites from the defected mitochondria and accumulated ROS. For example, a study showed remarkable success in treating the visual acuity of a large group of patients using idebenone. Many applications in clinical trials, such as Leber's Hereditary Optic Neuropathy (LHON,

Parkinson's disease), and MELAS syndrome, have assured the safety of idebenone and its efficacy, even at higher doses. It has passed phase III evaluation. Other CoQ analogues with diverse side-chain displayed unique biological activities and enhanced pharmacological properties, such as bioavailability, mitochondrial accumulation and antioxidant effect. And CoQ analogues with shorter isoprenoid side chains have more anti-oxidant potential. In addition, antioxidants, such as lipoic acid and N-acetyl-cysteine were used to decrease ROS-induced toxicity and accumulated ROS from the defected mitochondria [24-26].

Clinical approach using non-chemical treatments

In terms of non-chemical treatments for mitochondrial diseases, there is a tendency to address the pathology by transferring healthy mitochondria or normal mitochondrial gene into cells with dysfunctional mitochondria, rather than targeting mitochondrial pathways (Table 2, Figure 7). In the field of gene therapy, the adeno-associated virus (AAV) is known as a vehicle that can transduce packaged DNA (~4.7 kb) and enable allotropic expression in organisms.

A clinical approach for LHON patients, who have dysfunctional MT-ND4 in complex 1, involved a pre-clinical study using allotropic expression of normal MT-ND4 through mRNA delivery. A rodent model of LHON showed enhanced visual deficits, and the rescue of ATP synthesis was observed in patient-derived fibroblasts. Subsequently, gene delivery using AAV was performed to achieve similar results through allotropic expression, resulting in certain improvements in a mouse model of LHON.

Mitochondrial augmentation (MAT) is a therapeutic method that involves transferring normal exogenous mitochondria into cells with disordered mitochondria. Mitochondrial transfer between cells to restore respiration capability has been demonstrated by using mtDNA-mutated cells (A549) with hMSC or skin fibroblasts. MAT is a therapy that replaces disordered mitochondria in cells with normal mitochondria and is not limited to correcting specific pathogenic mutation. Another therapy option for the direct replacement of defective mitochondria is the use of patient-autologous mesoderm-derived stem cells, known as mesoangioblasts (MAB) [8].

For the treatment of unborn children whose parents have mitochondrial disease, mitochondrial replacement techniques (MRT) are promising procedures, which can be used to replace almost all disordered mitochondria with healthy ones in human oocytes or zygotes. Except for the fertilization process, various types of MRTs involve replacing the maternal nuclear DNA with the nuclear DNA in the donor's cells. Despite the successful results of MRT operations, there have been debatable outcomes, such as the reversion of mutated DNA and other ethical concerns. Ultimately, the FDA has announced that performing MRT is not permitted in the USA. Although clinical approaches using non-chemical treatments demonstrate their effect through numerous case studies, restoring efficiency remains elusive. Nevertheless, their approach towards achieving permanent effects, as opposed to chemical treatments, holds promise for a potential cure for mitochondrial diseases [8,27-30].

Table 2: Non-chemical clinical treatments for mitochondrial diseases

Target disease	Treatment	Mechanism
LHON (Leber hereditary optic neuropathy)	LUMEVOQ (GS010, rAAV2/2-ND4),	MT-ND4 deficiency rescue via allotopic expression of normal MT-ND4 using recombinant AAV
mtDNA depletion disease (Pearson syndrome)	Mitochondrial augmentation	Replacement of dysfunctional mitochondria with healthy-exogenous donor mitochondria using *in vitro* uptake
Mitochondrial myopathy with m.A3243G mutation	Mesoangioblasts (MABs)	Intra-arterial injection of in vitro cultured patient-autologous mesoangioblasts, which harbor far fewer mtDNA mutations despite a much higher mutation load in patient

Physical exercise

Mitochondria provide energy as ATP for muscle function. In mitochondrial dysfunctional states, there is less energy production coupled with increased excessive ROS, and this can trigger muscle atrophy, weakness, and loss of endurance. Exercise is known to increase mitochondria ETC activity in older human skeletal muscle, especially in sub sarcolemma (SS) mitochondria. Exercise counters mitochondrial dysfunction. The compensatory nature of exercise is through pathways involving molecular signaling to transcription, as well as to post-transcriptional events within the mitochondrial synthesis and degradation.

Healthy nutrition

Malnutrition states such as anorexia, starvation, and cachexia result in SMD. Malnutrition leads to OXPHOS abnormalities. Improvement in intake of calories improves mitochondrial health in these patients. Natural antioxidants can prevent and treat the disorders related to defective mitochondria as age progresses. *Ginkgo biloba*, an herbal drug, used for the improvement of cognitive dysfunction. Curcumin a yellow pigment derived from the rhizome part of the turmeric plant; omega-3 polyunsaturated fatty acids (ω-3 PUFAs), a group of essential fatty acids and triterpenoids, the derivatives of oleanolic acid are all known to inhibit oxidative stress.

Avoiding mitochondrial toxic drugs

There is number of drugs those have proven mitochondrial toxic effects and such drug should be avoided in mitochondrial dysfunctional disorders. These mitochondrial toxic drugs cause inhibition of ETC in OXPHOS, inducing oxidative stress, or inhibiting DNA replication, transcription, or translation. Valproic acid (VPA) is a commonly used antiepileptic drug that has well-established hepatotoxicity and steatosis due to mitochondrial dysfunction. It selectively affects α-lipoamide dehydrogenase in liver. Amide analogues of VPA show inhibitory effects on

mitochondrial OXPHOS. VPA produces inhibition of fatty acid oxidation, the citric acid cycle, OXPHOS, complex IV, and results in carnitine depletion [30-32].

Genetic therapies

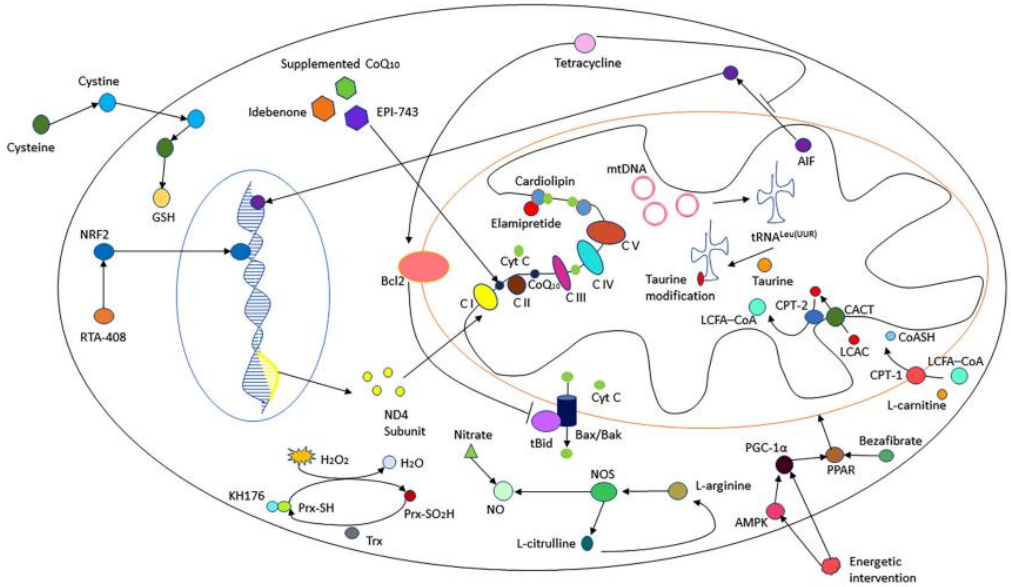


Figure 8: Mechanisms of different therapies. There are 16 kinds of interventions showed in this figure. Tetracycline inhibits the release of the apoptosis-inducing factor (AIF) and cytochrome c (Cyt C) from mitochondria by controlling mitochondrial permeability and upregulating Bcl-2, which prevents cleavage of Bid to truncated Bid (tBid) and antagonizes the death-promoting factors Bax and Bak. CoenzymeQ$_{10}$, idebenone and EPI-743 might act as electron carriers and antioxidants. Cysteine supplementation might enhance muscle cysteine and glutathione (GSH) availability. Omaveloxolone (RTA-408) prevents nuclear factor erythroid 2–related factor 2 (NRF2) from degradation and induces NRF2 transportation to the nucleus. KH176 might bind to peroxiredoxin (Prx) and promote its role of antioxidation to detoxify hydroperoxides (H2O2) by interacting with the thioredoxin (Trx) systems. Gene therapy like allotopic expression of ND4 subunit may repair the deficient complex I. L-Arginine, L-citrulline and inorganic nitrate induce nitric oxide (NO) synthesis. Energetic intervention and bezafibrate induce mitochondrial biogenesis by activating peroxisomal proliferator activated receptor (PPAR). L-Carnitine is needed for the translocation of fatty acids into the mitochondrial compartment for β-oxidation. Taurine modification of mitochondrial tRNALeu(UUR) is important for mtDNA translation. Elami-pretide protects cardiolipin from peroxidation by preventing Cyt C from unfolding and activating. AMPK: AMP-activated protein kinase; C I–IV: complex I–IV; CoA: acyl coenzyme A; CoASH: coenzyme A with a sulfhydryl functional group; CPT1/2: carnitine O-palmitoyltransferase 1/2; LCAC: long-chain acylcarnitines; LCFA: long-chain fatty acids; NOS, nitric oxide synthase; PGC-1α: peroxisomal proliferator activated receptor-γ coactivator-1α mtDNA.

Gene therapy can be defined as a treatment which corrects the underlying genetic abnormality in affected cells or individuals with a monogenic disorder. The type of gene therapy applicable to PMDs is dependent on whether the genetic defect is in nuclear DNA or in mtDNA. For nuclear gene defects, conventional 'gene replacement' approaches deliver a 'correct' (wild-type [WT]) copy of a mutated gene (gene of interest/ transgene) to the nucleus of target cells. The WT gene would then reconstitute normal protein function. This approach would be applicable to recessive disorders since the effect of gain of-function pathogenic variants would not be abolished by the expression a WT copy of the gene. Another type of gene therapy is RNA-based therapy.

Instead of providing the transgene in the form of DNA, an RNA version of the same therapeutic sequence can be provided. RNA therapies can function in a similar way to gene reconstitution or they can be engineered to 'knockdown' or 'turn-off' expression of other genes, for example through small interfering RNAs (siRNAs) or increase expression through small-activating RNAs. A third form of gene therapy is gene-editing, which aims to correct pathogenic variants in existing genes within cells without introducing new full-length copies of the target gene. This includes CRISPR-Cas9 gene editing to cut and recombine DNA and base editors [33-35].

Clinical challenges

One of the major challenges in terms of treatment is the extremely varied phenotype-genotype relationship seen in patients with mitochondrial disease. This is reflected not only in the involvement of different organs, but also in the severity of disease. Children may be affected by a severe neurodegenerative condition called Leigh's syndrome (subacute necrotizing encephalomyelopathy), but even with this syndrome, the prognosis varies markedly depending on the underlying genetic defect. Adult-onset disease is typically less severe and includes symptoms such as chronic progressive external ophthalmoplegia, deafness, and diabetes, but it may also manifest as relentlessly progressive seizures and stroke-like episodes culminating in a neurodegenerative dementia syndrome [36,37].

Prevention of transmission of mitochondrial diseases

Thus, for all patients with mitochondrial disease, accurate and specific genetic counselling is vital and should be made available for all patients. An in-depth discussion of the risks and potential benefits of all possible options will allow parents to decide on the most appropriate course of action for their family. Finally, it is also important that these discussions, especially for women who would consider one of the assisted reproduction options, should be as early as possible. With the age of mothers having their first child rising in many developed countries, there has to be a realization that there is an age-related decline in both oocyte quality and number that may negatively impact options [38,39].

Future perspectives

To date, treatment strategies are predominantly symptom based, focusing primarily on restorative (such as Q_{10} supplementation in primary genetic defects of coenzyme Q_{10} synthesis)

or preventative strategies during episodes of acute metabolic decompensation due to physiological stressors (such as dehydration, fever, surgery, sepsis). Although there are more than 50 clinical trials currently listed that purport to interrogate medicinal products targeting primary mitochondrial diseases, the evidence for most pharmacological strategies still remains largely anecdotal. Presently, only one drug, idebenone, has provided sufficient scientific evidence for FDA/European Medicines Agency (EMA) approval for mitochondrial disease, and this use is only for the acute visual loss in LHON.

However, there is great excitement in the mitochondrial field regarding future treatment options. There has been remarkable progress in mitochondrial disease over the past decade, both in terms of our basic understanding of mitochondrial biology and our ability to identify the genetic defect in the vast majority of patients. The unmet clinical need for treatment of patients with mitochondrial disease has stimulated both academic and commercial interest in developing new treatments, as has the awareness of mitochondrial involvement in more common diseases. Small molecule and genetic screens using either patient or genetically modified cell lines has identified new targets and some of these are unexpected. For example, who would have predicted that relative hypoxia would potentially be valuable in the treatment of OXPHOS disorders? The development of new drugs is a lengthy process but the possibility of using repurposed drugs that have a positive effect on mitochondrial function is something that is likely to have a more immediate effect on patients with mitochondrial disease.

We believe that major breakthroughs in the development of treatments for mitochondrial disease will occur during the next decade. This will be achieved by further advances in gene therapy and the development of screening assays to discover new small molecules to improve mitochondrial function. Together with devising innovative approaches to clinical trial design including the development of new wearable and immersive technologies and the creation of virtual controls, these advances will herald a truly new era in innovative, personalized medicine for patients with mitochondrial disease.

Several treatments show a great promise for primary mitochondrial disorders, yet, only a few of them have undergone controlled clinical trials or remain inconclusive. Currently, one medicine, in particular, idebenone, offers enough scientific evidence for treating mitochondrial dysfunctions, in addition to its ability to treat acute vision loss in LHON. However, there is continuous interest in developing potential therapeutic alternatives for mitochondrial diseases. Significant progress has been made in the fundamental understanding of mitochondrial biology and the ability to detect genetic abnormalities in most patients. The use of gene therapy to correct heteroplasmic mtDNA defects has been investigated for more than 25 years and is close to becoming a reality in its application clinically.

Meanwhile, the ability to conduct meaningful clinical trials to validate new treatments increases. The rarity of primary mitochondrial disorders has impacted the conduction of successful clinical trials, design and funding. However, significant breakthroughs in developing new therapeutic approaches will continue in the coming decade through further advances in gene

therapy and screening assays to improve mitochondrial function. Alongside the innovative approaches to clinical trial design, the development of new technologies and the creation of virtual controls will herald a new era, particularly in personalized medicine, for patients with mitochondrial diseases [8,40-42].

Conclusion:

Research into mitochondrial diseases has seen remarkable advances over the last ten years. Patients diagnosed with mitochondrial diseases are extremely rare, making it difficult to conduct sufficient case studies. Additionally, individuals with mitochondrial disease exhibit fatal symptoms, which poses a challenge for researchers attempting to study them. Therefore, it is a challenge to overcome these obstacles and develop effective treatments for mitochondrial disease. Many challenges remain. Although we are increasingly able to establish a genetic diagnosis in patients with mitochondrial disease, there are still patients for whom diagnosis is challenging. Cases involving late-onset, autosomal dominant conditions for which familial samples are not available are perhaps the most difficult group. There is little doubt that further advances in NGS, in particular the bioinformatics support, will lead to changes in the diagnostic algorithm and an increasing reliance on genetics rather than more conventional studies based on, for example, muscle biopsy.

One of the other challenges for the field is understanding the clinical variation in mitochondrial disease. A good example is Leber hereditary optic neuropathy, a maternally inherited form of blindness that affects retinal ganglion cells. More than 90% of patients have one of three, often homoplasmic, pathogenic mtDNA mutations. The biggest challenge in mitochondrial disease, however, is the lack of effective treatments. Despite the major advances highlighted in this review, for the vast majority of patients, therapy is limited to management of the complications of mitochondrial disease. The development of treatments may be highly disease specific (for example, bone marrow transplantation in patients with thymidine phosphorylase deficiency resulting from TYMP mutations) or may involve more generic strategies aimed at improving oxidative phosphorylation in patients with many different genetic defects. The development of large patient cohorts and registries will facilitate clinical trials in the future, and we hope that the next five years will see major advances in this area.

Remarkable progress has been achieved in the three decades of mitochondrial medicine since the identification of the first mtDNA mutations. Many potential therapeutic approaches for mitochondrial diseases have been proposed and are now at different stages of development. Translating preclinical studies to bedside remains challenging and well-controlled trials of high quality are necessary to define the efficacy of potential therapies already in use and to develop novel drugs. Based on the knowledge acquired with the previous studies, these future trials may overcome the challenges posed by this heterogeneous group of disorders in the context of multicenter collaborations, by selecting numerous subgroups of homogeneous patients and by selecting outcome measures that are objective and relevant to patient care and quality of life. Clearly, there are important unmet needs for evidence-based guidelines in the treatment of

mitochondrial patients and the development of more effective therapies. The emerging therapies provide exciting promise for clinically meaningful treatments for mitochondrial diseases. Mitochondrial targeted pharmaceuticals and lifestyle modifications (healthy diet and regular exercise) are useful in these disorders.

References:

1. Greber, B. J., & Ban, N. (2016). Structure and function of the mitochondrial ribosome. *Annual Review of Biochemistry, 85*, 103–132.
2. Pfeffer, G., Majamaa, K., Turnbull, D. M., Thorburn, D., & Chinnery, P. F. (2012). Treatment for mitochondrial disorders. *Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews, 2012*(4), CD004426.
3. Avula, S., Parikh, S., Demarest, S., Kurz, J., & Gropman, A. (2014). Treatment of mitochondrial disorders. *Current Treatment Options in Neurology, 16*, 292.
4. Gorman, G. S., Chinnery, P. F., DiMauro, S., Hirano, M., Koga, Y., McFarland, R., et al. (2016). Mitochondrial diseases. *Nature Reviews Disease Primers, 2*, 16080.
5. Martín-Villanueva, S., Galmozzi, C. V., Ruger-Herreros, C., Kressler, D., & de la Cruz, J. (2024). The beak of eukaryotic ribosomes: Life, work, and miracles. *Biomolecules, 14*(7), 882.
6. Burki, F. (2016). Mitochondrial evolution: Going, going, gone. *Current Biology, 26*, R410–R412.
7. Schapira, A. H. (2006). Mitochondrial disease. *The Lancet, 368*, 70–82.
8. Hong, S., Kim, S., Kim, K., & Lee, H. (2023). Clinical approaches for mitochondrial diseases. *Cells, 12*, 2494.
9. Ott, M., Amunts, A., & Brown, A. (2016). Organization and regulation of mitochondrial protein synthesis. *Annual Review of Biochemistry, 85*, 77–101.
10. Boengler, K., Heusch, G., & Schulz, R. (2011). Nuclear-encoded mitochondrial proteins and their role in cardioprotection. *Biochimica et Biophysica Acta (BBA) - Molecular Cell Research, 1813*, 1286–1294.
11. Wong, L.-J. C. (2007). Diagnostic challenges of mitochondrial DNA disorders. *Mitochondrion, 7*, 45–52.
12. Thorburn, D. R. (2004). Mitochondrial disorders: Prevalence, myths, and advances. *Journal of Inherited Metabolic Disease, 27*, 349–362.
13. Mikhail, A. I., Ng, S. Y., Mattina, S. R., & Ljubicic, V. (2023). AMPK is mitochondrial medicine for neuromuscular disorders. *Trends in Molecular Medicine, 29*, 512–529.
14. Aldossary, A. M., Tawfik, E. A., Alomary, M. N., Alsudir, S. A., Alfahad, A. J., Alshehri, A. A., Almughem, F. A., Mohammed, R. Y., & Alzaydi, M. M. (2022). Recent advances in mitochondrial diseases: From molecular insights to therapeutic perspectives. *Saudi Pharmaceutical Journal, 30*(8), 1065–1078.
15. Hirano, M., Emmanuele, V., & Quinzii, C. M. (2018). Emerging therapies for mitochondrial diseases. *Essays in Biochemistry, 62*(3), 467–481.

16. Richter, U., McFarland, R., Taylor, R. W., & Pickett, S. J. (2021). The molecular pathology of pathogenic mitochondrial tRNA variants. *FEBS Letters, 595*(8), 1003–1024.
17. Koludarova, L., & Battersby, B. J. (2024). Mitochondrial protein synthesis quality control. *Human Molecular Genetics, 33*(R1), R53–R60.
18. Ahmed, S. T., Craven, L., Russell, O. M., Turnbull, D. M., & Vincent, A. E. (2018). Diagnosis and treatment of mitochondrial myopathies. *Neurotherapeutics, 15*(4), 943–953.
19. Craven, L., Alston, C. L., Taylor, R. W., & Turnbull, D. M. (2017). Recent advances in mitochondrial disease. *Annual Review of Genomics and Human Genetics, 18*, 257–275.
20. Hornig-Do, H. T., Montanari, A., Rozanska, A., Tuppen, H. A., Almalki, A. A., Abg-Kamaludin, D. P., Frontali, L., Francisci, S., Lightowlers, R. N., & Chrzanowska-Lightowlers, Z. M. (2014). Human mitochondrial leucyl tRNA synthetase can suppress non-cognate pathogenic mt-tRNA mutations. *EMBO Molecular Medicine, 6*(2), 183–193.
21. Loguercio Polosa, P., Capriglia, F., & Bruni, F. (2023). Molecular investigation of mitochondrial RNA19 role in the pathogenesis of MELAS disease. *Life, 13*(9), 1863.
22. DiMauro, S., & Mancuso, M. (2007). Mitochondrial diseases: Therapeutic approaches. *Bioscience Reports, 27*(1-3), 125–137.
23. Perli, E., Fiorillo, A., Giordano, C., Pisano, A., Montanari, A., Grazioli, P., Campese, A. F., Di Micco, P., Tuppen, H. A., Genovese, I., Poser, E., Preziuso, C., Taylor, R. W., Morea, V., Colotti, G., & d'Amati, G. (2016). Short peptides from leucyl-tRNA synthetase rescue disease-causing mitochondrial tRNA point mutations. *Human Molecular Genetics, 25*(5), 903–915.
24. DiMauro, S., Hirano, M., & Schon, E. A. (2006). Approaches to the treatment of mitochondrial diseases. *Muscle & Nerve, 34*(3), 265–283.
25. Scarpelli, M., Cotelli, M. S., Mancuso, M., Tomelleri, G., Tonin, P., Baronchelli, C., Vielmi, V., Gregorelli, V., Todeschini, A., Padovani, A., & Filosto, M. (2010). Current options in the treatment of mitochondrial diseases. *Recent Patents on CNS Drug Discovery, 5*(3), 203–209.
26. Schon, E. A., DiMauro, S., Hirano, M., & Gilkerson, R. W. (2010). Therapeutic prospects for mitochondrial disease. *Trends in Molecular Medicine, 16*(6), 268–276.
27. DiMauro, S., Mancuso, M., & Naini, A. (2004). Mitochondrial encephalomyopathies: Therapeutic approach. *Annals of the New York Academy of Sciences, 1011*, 232–245.
28. Viscomi, C. (2016). Toward a therapy for mitochondrial disease. *Biochemical Society Transactions, 44*(5), 1483–1490.
29. Koene, S., & Smeitink, J. (2009). Mitochondrial medicine: Entering the era of treatment. *Journal of Internal Medicine, 265*(2), 193–209.
30. Szeto, H. H. (2014). First-in-class cardiolipin-protective compound as a therapeutic agent to restore mitochondrial bioenergetics. *British Journal of Pharmacology, 171*(8), 2029–2050.

31. Valero, T. (2014). Mitochondrial biogenesis: Pharmacological approaches. *Current Pharmaceutical Design, 20*(35), 5507–5509.
32. Khajuria, K., Khajuria, V., & Sawhney, V. (2021). Mitochondrial disease therapy. *Asian Journal of Pharmaceutical and Clinical Research, 14*(5), 24–30.
33. Ni, Y., Zhang, X., Li, J., Lu, Q., Chen, H., Ma, B., & Liu, C. (2023). Genetic diversity of *Coffea arabica* L. mitochondrial genomes caused by repeat-mediated recombination and RNA editing. *Frontiers in Plant Science, 14*, 1261012.
34. Di Meo, I., Lamperti, C., & Tiranti, V. (2015). Mitochondrial diseases caused by toxic compound accumulation: From etiopathology to therapeutic approaches. *EMBO Molecular Medicine, 7*(10), 1257–1266.
35. Scarpelli, M., Todeschini, A., Volonghi, I., Padovani, A., & Filosto, M. (2017). Mitochondrial diseases: Advances and issues. *Applied Clinical Genetics, 10*, 21–26.
36. Wang, H., Han, Y., Li, S., Chen, Y., Chen, Y., Wang, J., Zhang, Y., Zhang, Y., Wang, J., Xia, Y., & Yuan, J. (2022). Mitochondrial DNA depletion syndrome and its associated cardiac disease. *Frontiers in Cardiovascular Medicine, 8*, 808115.
37. Liu, K., Zhou, Z., Pan, M., & Zhang, L. (2021). Stem cell-derived mitochondria transplantation: A promising therapy for mitochondrial encephalomyopathy. *CNS Neuroscience & Therapeutics, 27*(7), 733–742.
38. Goto, Y. (2000). Mitochondrial encephalomyopathy. *Neuropathology, 20*(Suppl), S82–S84.
39. Schon, E. A., Hirano, M., & DiMauro, S. (1994). Mitochondrial encephalomyopathies: Clinical and molecular analysis. *Journal of Bioenergetics and Biomembranes, 26*(3), 291–299.
40. Shoubridge, E. A. (1994). Mitochondrial DNA diseases: Histological and cellular studies. *Journal of Bioenergetics and Biomembranes, 26*(3), 301–310.
41. Cock, H., & Schapira, A. H. (1999). Mitochondrial DNA mutations and mitochondrial dysfunction in epilepsy. *Epilepsia, 40*(Suppl 3), 33–40.
42. Liufu, T., & Wang, Z. (2021). Treatment for mitochondrial diseases. *Reviews in the Neurosciences, 32*(1), 35–47.

THE EVOLUTION OF CELL THEORY: PRESENT INSIGHTS

Siddhesh G. Waghmare*[1] and Ameetul Noor Zeba Khannam[2]
[1]Department of Biotechnology, S.R.T.M.U. Nanded, M.S.
[2]JNTUH, Kukatpally, Hyderabad.
*Corresponding author E-mail: siddheshwaghmare250301@gmail.com

Abstract:

This article explores contemporary cellular theory. It discusses the cell as a fundamental unit of structure, physiology, and biological organization, highlighting its dual role as both an independent entity and a building block of organisms.

Keywords: Structure, Organization, Cell, Theory, Crystal, Organism, Genetic Code.

Introduction:

It is widely accepted that cell theory is one of the foundational concepts in modern biology. Today's interpretations of cell theory are more flexible, partly due to its historical development and the shift in its relevance and metaphysical considerations.

In 1839, Theodor Schwann summarized the observations made by himself and Matthias Schleiden into three key points of cell theory:

1. The cell is a fundamental unit of structure, physiology, and biological organization.
2. The cell exists both as an independent entity and as a building block in the construction of organisms.
3. Cells form through a process similar to the formation of crystals.

However, Schwann made a significant error by agreeing with Schleiden that cells could arise spontaneously from non-cellular material. The importance of cell division and mitosis was not yet understood at that time. By the 1870s, it was firmly established that cells arise from pre-existing cells, making the third point of the original cell theory incorrect.

This development in understanding marked a crucial shift in biology, emphasizing the continuity of life through cellular replication. The realization that new cells are generated by the division of existing cells laid the groundwork for modern cell biology and genetics. The advancements in microscopy and staining techniques in the late 19th and early 20th centuries provided further insights into cellular structures and processes. Scientists like Walther Flemming, who described mitosis in detail, and later, the discovery of chromosomes and their role in heredity, significantly expanded the scope of cell theory.

Today, cell theory encompasses more than just the structural and functional roles of cells. It integrates molecular biology, genetics, and biochemistry to explain how cells operate, communicate, and contribute to the overall functioning of an organism. The understanding of the genetic code, the mechanisms of DNA replication, transcription, and translation, and the intricate pathways of cellular signaling and metabolism are all extensions of the original cell theory.

Furthermore, modern cell theory acknowledges the complexity of multicellular organisms and the specialization of cells into various types, each performing unique functions. Stem cell research has also highlighted the potential for cellular differentiation and the ability to regenerate tissues, providing new avenues for medical advancements. In summary, while the core principles

of cell theory established by Schwann and Schleiden remain relevant, contemporary science has vastly expanded and refined these concepts. The cell is recognized not only as a structural unit but also as a dynamic, interactive entity crucial to the development, maintenance, and evolution of life.

The first postulate of cell theory states that "the cell is a unit of structure, physiology, and biological organization." This is often interpreted to mean that there is no life outside the cell. However, viruses challenge this notion. Although not cellular, viruses are undeniably biological entities. They share a connection with cellular life forms because they use the same standard genetic code and require proteins for their functions. This commonality suggests that the "unity of life" extends to viruses as well. Traditionally, viruses are not classified as living organisms because they lack metabolism and the ability to generate energy independently—both considered essential characteristics of life. However, when viruses infect a host cell, they do engage in metabolic activities. They hijack the cell's machinery to replicate and produce energy, behaving much like cellular life forms. The inactive forms we often see in micrographs are their dormant stages, akin to plant seeds, worm eggs, or ciliate cysts.

Critics argue that viruses can't carry out essential life processes such as replication and metabolism on their own. This is true, but it doesn't negate their biological significance. Viruses are obligate parasites, relying entirely on their hosts for survival and replication. Despite this dependency, they play a crucial role in biological evolution, acting as both objects and agents of change. In fact, viruses are the most numerous biological entities on Earth, outnumbering cellular life forms. This suggests that cellular life forms, including humans, might actually be in the minority.

So, while the statement "there is no life outside the cell" holds in a traditional sense, the existence and behavior of viruses prompt us to rethink the boundaries of life. Their dependence on cellular mechanisms doesn't make them any less integral to the fabric of life on Earth. This perspective broadens our understanding of what it means to be alive, encompassing the diverse and intricate interactions that define biological existence. From the first postulate of cell theory, it is typically concluded that all cells are homologous to each other. However, there are significant structural differences between prokaryotic and eukaryotic cells. According to the endosymbiotic theory, eukaryotic cells are more complex and can be seen as multicellular constructs, making them not entirely homologous to prokaryotic cells. Prokaryotic cells are actually homologous to organelles like mitochondria and chloroplasts, and possibly to an ancestral protoeukaryotic cell derived from Asgardarchaeobacteria. This direct phylogenetic connection between eukaryotes and a group of archaebacteria challenges the traditional concept of three domains of cellular life, suggesting there are only two: archaebacteria and eubacteria.

The second postulate of cell theory states that all known living beings consist of one or more cells. While this seems straightforward now, it primarily applies to the "multicellular minority" to which we belong, as there are far more unicellular organisms than multicellular ones. Additionally, viruses outnumber cellular organisms significantly. The third postulate of cell theory, "the cell comes only from another cell," highlights the genetic continuity of the cell's main components: the genetic apparatus, membranes, and cytoplasm (cytosol). This means that "chromosomes come only from chromosomes," "membranes come only from membranes," and

"cytoplasm comes only from cytoplasm." These components are not formed de novo within the cell but are inherited from parent cells. In contrast, other cell components like the cytoskeleton, flagella, ribosomes, and cell walls do not show such continuity.

The three primary components of a cell are membranes, cytoplasm, and the genetic apparatus. Membranes are responsible for separating the intracellular space from the extracellular environment and facilitating interactions within the cell. The cytoplasm handles metabolism, energy production, and protein biosynthesis. The genetic apparatus (DNA) provides the information necessary for life and its evolution. The continuity of the genetic apparatus is based on the replication of hereditary information through DNA molecules, ensuring that "each molecule comes from a molecule." All elements of the cell's genetic apparatus, such as chromosomes, nucleoids, viroids, and plasmids, are ultimately homologous and share a common evolutionary origin. The universality of the standard genetic code supports this conclusion.

Protoplasm, also known as hyaloplasm or cytosol, is the fundamental and essential component of a cell. In this context, protoplasm refers to the "living gel" of the cell, excluding membranes and the genetic apparatus (DNA). It is separated from the external environment of the cell and its internal compartments, such as those within the endomembrane system. Protoplasm only comes from existing, living protoplasm, and it dies along with the cell.

The nucleoplasm is a specialized part of the eukaryotic protoplasm. It is involved in replication, transcription, splicing (and general mRNA processing), and ribosome assembly. It is believed that the widespread occurrence of splicing in protoeukaryotes necessitated the separation of translation and transcription processes, leading to the formation of the nuclear envelope. Unlike the cytoplasm, the nucleoplasm, similar to prokaryotic protoplasm, is immobile and lacks the actin-myosin mobility found in the cytoplasm. This mobility in the cytoplasm likely required the DNA strands to be protected by the nuclear envelope.

The cytoplasm of a eukaryotic cell is equivalent to the stroma of chloroplasts and the matrix of mitochondria, which originate from the cytoplasm of endosymbiont prokaryotes. All types of protoplasm share a common origin and are homologous. However, there is no indication that eukaryotic cytoplasm can fuse with the mitochondrial matrix, plastid stroma, or endosymbiont cytoplasm. The periplasm of gram-negative bacteria, which is the space between the plasma and outer membranes, is not homologous to their protoplasm but corresponds to the external environment.

With the formation of membranes, the concept of a primary living cell became possible. These membranes provided a reliable barrier, separating the cell’s contents from the external environment. The primary membrane was likely the plasma membrane, considered the cell’s first "organ." It isolated and protected the protoplasm and genetic apparatus, enabling the cell’s metabolism and preventing its dissolution in the environment. This separation created "individuality" and "corpuscularity," essential for Darwinian selection to operate. It's important to note that membranes are not flat layers; they are always closed structures, forming hollow vacuoles, vesicles, etc. Biomembranes always separate the protoplasm from the external environment or its derivatives, such as the spaces within the endomembrane system.

The endomembrane system developed later. The endoplasmic reticulum (ER) is a central and possibly primary component of this system in eukaryotic cells. However, the ER is not just a

membrane system; it cannot be understood in isolation from the actin-myosin and microtubule-driven mobility of the cytoplasm. This mobility enables vesicle transport, a crucial function of the endomembrane system in eukaryotic cells. The endomembrane system likely originated from the invagination of the plasma membrane. The outer membranes of chloroplasts, mitochondria, and Gram-negative bacteria appear homologous, as they do not connect with membranes derived from the ER. The origin of the outer membrane in Gram-negative bacteria remains unclear, suggesting it is not homologous to the general cell membrane system.

Since the formulation of cell theory, our understanding of the cell has greatly expanded and deepened, necessitating further study. Overall, while cell theory holds great historical significance, much of its original context is now viewed through the lens of our expanded scientific knowledge.

Summary:

Cell theory is a foundational concept in biology, originally positing that the cell is the basic unit of structure, physiology, and biological organization, and that cells arise only from pre-existing cells. Despite structural differences between prokaryotic and eukaryotic cells, all cells share a common origin. Viruses challenge the idea that life exists only within cells, as they rely on cellular machinery for replication and metabolism. Protoplasm, excluding membranes and DNA, is essential and originates from existing protoplasm. The nucleoplasm in eukaryotes is specialized for genetic processes, and the cytoplasm, derived from endosymbionts, handles metabolism and energy production. Membranes, particularly the plasma membrane, are crucial for cellular isolation and function. The endomembrane system, including the ER, evolved from plasma membrane invaginations and is vital for vesicle transport. While cell theory has deep historical significance, modern science has expanded and refined our understanding of cellular complexity and evolution.

References:

1. Mirabdullaev, I. M. (1989). The problem of the origin of eukaryotes. *Good Luck Today. Biology, 107*, 341-356.
2. Martin, W. F., Garg, S., & Zimorski, V. (2015). Endosymbiotic theories for eukaryote origin. *Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society B: Biological Sciences, 370*(20140330). https://doi.org/10.1098/rstb.2014.0330
3. Williams, T. A., Foster, P. G., Cox, C. J., & Embley, T. M. (2013). An archaeal origin of eukaryotes supports only two primary domains of life. *Nature, 504*, 231-236.

DENDRIMERS: A POTENTIAL DRUG DELIVERY SYSTEMS

Nirmal Shah*, Dipti Gohil, Chintan Aundhia and Sunil Kardani
Department of Pharmacy,
Sumandeep Vidyapeeth Deemed to be University,
Piparia, Vadodara, Gujarat, India
*Corresponding author E-mail: nimspharma@gmail.com

Abstract:

Dendrimers, a class of highly branched, tree-like polymers, have emerged as a promising tool in the field of nanomedicine, particularly for drug delivery applications. Their unique structural characteristics, including a well-defined, nanoscale architecture, high degree of surface functionality, and the ability to encapsulate both hydrophilic and hydrophobic drugs, make them ideal candidates for targeted and controlled drug delivery. This chapter provides a comprehensive overview of dendrimers, focusing on their synthesis, functionalization, and the mechanisms by which they facilitate drug encapsulation and release. The chapter delves into the advantages of using dendrimers in drug delivery, including their high drug-loading capacity, controlled release properties, and potential for reduced toxicity and enhanced targeting. It also addresses the challenges and limitations associated with dendrimer-based drug delivery systems, such as potential toxicity, stability issues, and the high cost of production. Additionally, recent advances in dendrimer research and novel dendrimer designs are explored, highlighting their potential to revolutionize drug delivery systems. This chapter aims to provide a detailed understanding of dendrimers as a versatile and potent platform for drug delivery, emphasizing their potential to significantly improve therapeutic outcomes in various medical fields.

Keywords: Dendrimers, Drug delivery, High encapsulation capacity, Controlled release

Introduction:

Drug delivery systems (DDS) play a crucial role in modern medicine, offering methods to deliver therapeutic agents in a controlled and targeted manner. The primary objective of these systems is to enhance the efficacy and safety of drugs by controlling the rate, time, and place of release in the body. Over the years, advancements in DDS have significantly improved the treatment of various diseases, particularly those requiring precise dosage and targeted delivery, such as cancer, cardiovascular diseases, and neurological disorders.

Drug delivery systems are an essential component of modern therapeutics, with the potential to transform how we treat diseases. While traditional methods have laid the foundation, advancements in controlled, targeted, and nanotechnology-based DDS are paving the way for more effective, safe, and personalized treatments. As research in this field continues to advance, the future of drug delivery holds great promise for improving patient outcomes across a wide range of medical conditions.

Overview of dendrimers

Dendrimers are a unique class of synthetic macromolecules characterized by a highly branched, tree-like structure. The term "dendrimer" is derived from the Greek words "dendron," meaning tree, and "meros," meaning part. These nanoscale polymers have a well-defined, symmetric structure that consists of three main components: a central core, an inner layer of repeating units (generations), and an outer layer of functional groups [1-3].

Due to their precisely controlled architecture and numerous functional end groups, dendrimers have garnered significant attention in various scientific fields, including drug delivery, nanotechnology, and material science. Their unique properties, such as monodispersity, multivalency, and the ability to encapsulate various molecules, make them particularly attractive for biomedical applications.

Importance of nanotechnology in drug delivery

Nanotechnology, the science of manipulating materials at the nanometer scale, has revolutionized the field of drug delivery. By working at the molecular and atomic levels, nanotechnology offers unprecedented precision in the design and development of drug delivery systems (DDS). These nanoscale systems provide innovative solutions to many of the challenges faced in traditional drug delivery, such as poor drug solubility, non-specific targeting, and undesirable side effects[4].

- Enhanced Drug Solubility and Bioavailability
- Targeted Drug Delivery
- Controlled and Sustained Release
- Reduced Toxicity and Side Effects
- Overcoming Biological Barriers
- Multifunctionality and Theranostics

Nanotechnology has fundamentally transformed the landscape of drug delivery by providing innovative solutions that enhance the solubility, targeting, and controlled release of therapeutic agents. By addressing the limitations of traditional drug delivery methods, nanotechnology-based DDS offer significant improvements in efficacy, safety, and patient outcomes. As research continues to advance, nanotechnology is poised to play an increasingly vital role in developing next-generation therapeutics, bringing us closer to more effective, personalized, and minimally invasive treatments.

General structure of dendrimers

Dendrimers are highly branched, tree-like macromolecules with a unique and precise architecture. Their structure is composed of three primary components: a central core, repetitive branching units, and terminal functional groups. This well-defined, nanoscale structure distinguishes dendrimers from linear polymers and gives them exceptional properties that are particularly useful in drug delivery, nanotechnology, and other applications[5-7].

1. Central core

The central core of a dendrimer serves as the foundation from which the dendrimer structure grows. The core can be a single atom, a small molecule, or a functional group that provides multiple reactive sites for the attachment of the first generation of branching units. The choice of core plays a crucial role in determining the final shape, size, and functionality of the dendrimer.

- **Common core structures:** Ethylenediamine, ammonia, and pentaerythritol are commonly used core molecules in dendrimer synthesis. For example, ethylenediamine is often used in the synthesis of Polyamidoamine (PAMAM) dendrimers.

2. Branching units (Generations)

Branching units, also known as repeat units, are added step-by-step to the core to form layers, called generations. Each generation represents a new layer of branches growing outward from the core, effectively doubling the number of terminal groups with each subsequent generation. The process continues until the desired generation number is reached.

- **Generations:** Dendrimers are classified by their generation number, which indicates how many layers of branching units are present. A first-generation dendrimer has one layer of branches attached to the core, while a second-generation dendrimer has two layers, and so on. As the generation number increases, the size, molecular weight, and number of surface groups of the dendrimer also increase.
- **Branching patterns:** The branching pattern can vary, but it is typically symmetric, creating a highly regular, tree-like structure. The symmetry and regularity of branching contribute to the monodispersity and defined molecular weight of dendrimers.

3. Terminal functional groups

The outermost layer of a dendrimer is composed of terminal functional groups, also known as surface groups. These functional groups are located at the end of each branch and play a significant role in determining the dendrimer's properties, including its solubility, reactivity, and ability to interact with other molecules.

- **Functionalization:** Terminal groups can be functionalized with various chemical groups to tailor the dendrimer for specific applications. For example, amine, carboxyl, hydroxyl, or thiol groups can be introduced to enhance the dendrimer's solubility in water, facilitate drug attachment, or target specific biological receptors.
- **Surface charge:** The nature of the terminal groups often dictates the overall surface charge of the dendrimer, which can be positive, negative, or neutral. This surface charge influences the dendrimer's interaction with biological membranes and its ability to encapsulate or bind with other molecules.

4. Internal cavities and void spaces

One of the most distinctive features of dendrimers is the presence of internal cavities or void spaces created by the branched structure. These cavities provide the dendrimer with the ability to encapsulate guest molecules, such as drugs, genes, or imaging agents, within its

interior. The encapsulation can protect the guest molecules from degradation, improve their solubility, and enable controlled release.

- **Encapsulation mechanisms:** Dendrimers can encapsulate molecules through non-covalent interactions, such as hydrogen bonding, van der Waals forces, or hydrophobic interactions. In some cases, covalent bonds can be used to attach drugs or other molecules to the dendrimer's branches or core.

The general structure of dendrimers—consisting of a central core, branching generations, and terminal functional groups—gives them unique properties that are valuable in a wide range of applications. The ability to precisely control their size, shape, and functionality, combined with their internal cavities and monodispersity, makes dendrimers particularly well-suited for use in drug delivery, where they can encapsulate drugs, target specific tissues, and release therapeutic agents in a controlled manner. As research in nanotechnology and materials science progresses, the structural versatility of dendrimers will continue to offer new possibilities for innovation in various fields.

Types of dendrimers

Dendrimers are categorized based on their core structure, branching units, and surface functionalities. Each type of dendrimer has unique properties and applications, particularly in drug delivery, nanotechnology, and material science. Below are some of the most commonly studied types of dendrimers[8-11]:

1. Polya Midoamine (PAMAM) dendrimers

PAMAM dendrimers are among the most widely studied and commercially available dendrimers. They are synthesized using an ethylenediamine or ammonia core, with amide and amine linkages forming the branches. The surface groups are usually primary amines, which can be further modified to introduce various functionalities.

High solubility in water and many organic solvents. Biocompatibility and low toxicity, making them suitable for biomedical applications. High degree of surface functionality, allowing for extensive chemical modifications.

- Drug delivery: Encapsulation of drugs, targeted drug delivery, and gene delivery.
- Diagnostic imaging: As contrast agents in magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) and other imaging techniques.
- Gene therapy: Delivery of nucleic acids like DNA and RNA.

2. Polypropyleneimine (PPI) dendrimers

PPI dendrimers are built on a diaminobutane core with polypropyleneimine as the branching units. They typically have tertiary amine groups within the structure and primary amine groups on the surface.

High density of surface amine groups. Similar to PAMAM dendrimers, but with a slightly different internal structure. Often have a more rigid structure compared to PAMAM dendrimers.

- Drug delivery: Particularly in cancer therapy, where the high density of amine groups can be used to conjugate drugs.
- Catalysis: PPI dendrimers can be used as catalysts or catalyst supports in chemical reactions.
- Nanomaterials: In the synthesis of metallic nanoparticles and other nanostructured materials.

3. Polyether dendrimers

Polyether dendrimers are composed of polyether branching units, with an alkyl or aryl core. The terminal groups can be hydroxyl, methoxy, or other functional groups.

Flexible and less rigid compared to other dendrimers. Good solubility in a variety of solvents, including organic solvents. Resistance to degradation, making them suitable for long-term applications.

- Drug delivery: Particularly for hydrophobic drugs due to their flexible structure.
- Solubilizing agents: Used to increase the solubility of poorly soluble compounds.
- Surface coatings: In creating hydrophilic or hydrophobic surfaces.

4. Carbosilane dendrimers

Carbosilane dendrimers have a silicon-containing core and branching units, which give them unique properties. They can be functionalized with various groups on the surface, including hydrophobic or hydrophilic groups.

High thermal stability and resistance to oxidation. Hydrophobic nature due to the presence of silicon, though surface modifications can alter this.

- Nanomaterials: Used in the synthesis of nanostructured materials and as precursors for ceramic materials.
- Drug delivery: Particularly in delivering hydrophobic drugs.
- Surface modification: For creating hydrophobic coatings and surfaces.

5. Poly(L-lysine) (PLL) dendrimers

PLL dendrimers are synthesized using L-lysine as the building block, forming a highly branched polypeptide structure. The surface groups are typically amino groups, which can be further modified.

Biocompatibility and biodegradability due to the polypeptide nature. Suitable for biomedical applications, particularly in vivo.

- Gene delivery: Used in gene therapy for delivering DNA and RNA.
- Drug delivery: Especially in cancer therapy, where biocompatibility is crucial.
- Vaccine development: As carriers for antigens in vaccine formulations.

6. Phosphorus dendrimers

Phosphorus dendrimers contain phosphorus atoms in their branching units, providing unique properties. The core and branching units can be customized to include various functional groups.

High chemical versatility due to the presence of phosphorus. Can be functionalized with a wide variety of surface groups, including those that interact with biological systems.

- Catalysis: Used as catalysts in various chemical reactions.
- Drug delivery: Particularly in systems where interaction with biological membranes is important.
- Nanomaterials: As building blocks for creating nanostructured materials.

7. Polyester dendrimers

Polyester dendrimers are composed of ester linkages in their branching units. The core can be a simple molecule like pentaerythritol, with ester bonds forming the branches.

Biodegradable due to the presence of ester bonds, which can be hydrolyzed in biological environments. High biocompatibility, making them suitable for drug delivery and biomedical applications.

- Drug delivery: Particularly for controlled release systems where degradation over time is desired.
- Tissue engineering: Used in the creation of biodegradable scaffolds for tissue regeneration.
- Gene delivery: As carriers for nucleic acids in gene therapy.

8. Hybrid dendrimers

Hybrid dendrimers combine different types of branching units or functional groups to create a dendrimer with tailored properties. These can include combinations of organic and inorganic components, or different types of polymers.

Customizable properties, allowing for the design of dendrimers with specific functionalities for particular applications. Can exhibit the benefits of multiple types of dendrimers within a single molecule.

- Multifunctional drug delivery systems: Combining targeting, imaging, and therapeutic functions.
- Advanced nanomaterials: Used in creating materials with specific mechanical, thermal, or optical properties.
- Diagnostic agents: As carriers for imaging agents that also deliver therapeutic compounds.

Functionalization of dendrimers

Functionalization of dendrimers refers to the process of chemically modifying dendrimers, which are highly branched, tree-like macromolecules. This process allows scientists to tailor the properties of dendrimers for specific applications by attaching various functional groups to their surface or internal structures[12-15].

Core functionalization:

- Involves modifying the innermost part of the dendrimer (the core).

- Typically, the core functionalization can alter the overall stability, solubility, or the ability to further modify the dendrimer.

Peripheral (Surface) functionalization:

- Involves attaching functional groups to the outermost branches (periphery) of the dendrimer.
- This is the most common type of functionalization.
- It can be used to modify solubility, biocompatibility, targeting ability (for drug delivery), or to introduce reactive sites for further chemical reactions.

Internal functionalization:

- Functional groups are introduced within the internal cavities or layers of the dendrimer.
- This can affect the dendrimer's ability to encapsulate guest molecules, such as drugs or imaging agents.

Dendrimers in drug delivery applications[16-18]

Cancer therapy:

- Dendrimers can be designed to target tumor cells specifically, delivering chemotherapeutic agents directly to the tumor site while minimizing damage to healthy tissues.

Gene therapy:

- Cationic dendrimers can be used to deliver DNA, RNA, or other genetic material into cells, offering a promising approach for treating genetic disorders.

Antimicrobial delivery:

- Dendrimers can enhance the delivery of antimicrobial agents, potentially overcoming issues related to drug resistance and biofilm formation.

Ocular drug delivery:

- The unique properties of dendrimers make them suitable for delivering drugs to the eye, where they can enhance drug retention and penetration.

Oral drug delivery:

- Dendrimers can be used to improve the oral bioavailability of poorly soluble drugs, making them more effective when taken by mouth.

Advantages of dendrimers in drug delivery[19-20]

Enhanced solubility:

- Dendrimers can improve the solubility of hydrophobic drugs, increasing their bioavailability and therapeutic effectiveness.

Reduced toxicity:

- By controlling the release of the drug, dendrimers can minimize off-target effects and reduce toxicity, especially for potent drugs like chemotherapy agents.

Improved pharmacokinetics:

- Dendrimers can prolong the circulation time of drugs in the bloodstream, improving their pharmacokinetic profile and allowing for less frequent dosing.

Targeted delivery:

- The ability to attach targeting ligands to dendrimers allows for precise delivery of drugs to specific cells or tissues, increasing the therapeutic effect while minimizing side effects.

Multifunctionality:

- Dendrimers can carry multiple drugs, targeting ligands, and imaging agents simultaneously, allowing for combination therapy or theranostics (therapy + diagnostics).

Challenges and considerations

Toxicity:

- While dendrimers can reduce the toxicity of drugs, the dendrimers themselves may induce toxicity if not properly designed. Biocompatibility and biodegradability are important considerations.

Complex synthesis:

- The synthesis of dendrimers can be complex and costly, particularly for higher-generation dendrimers with many branching points.

Regulatory hurdles:

- The novel nature of dendrimers in drug delivery may present challenges in regulatory approval, as extensive safety and efficacy testing are required.

Emerging trends in dendrimer research

Dendrimer research is a rapidly evolving field, with ongoing advancements that are expanding the potential applications of these highly branched macromolecules. Here are some of the emerging trends in dendrimer research[21-22]:

Biodegradable and biocompatible dendrimers

The development of dendrimers that are both biodegradable and biocompatible to reduce potential toxicity and environmental impact. Polyester dendrimers, polypeptide-based dendrimers, and sugar-based dendrimers are being explored for their ability to break down into non-toxic by products in the body.

Dendrimers for targeted drug delivery

Enhancing the targeting capabilities of dendrimers to deliver drugs more effectively to specific tissues or cells, such as tumors. Incorporation of targeting ligands like antibodies, peptides, or aptamers on the dendrimer surface for precise targeting, particularly in cancer therapy. Active targeting strategies are being developed to deliver chemotherapeutics to tumors while sparing healthy tissue, reducing side effects.

Gene therapy applications

Using dendrimers as non-viral vectors for the delivery of nucleic acids, such as DNA, siRNA, or mRNA. Designing dendrimers with optimized cationic surfaces for efficient nucleic acid binding, protection, and delivery into cells. Dendrimers that can safely and effectively deliver gene-editing tools like CRISPR-Cas9 are a key area of exploration.

Dendrimers in theranostics

Combining therapeutic and diagnostic functions within a single dendrimer structure, enabling simultaneous treatment and monitoring of diseases. Dendrimers conjugated with imaging agents (e.g., MRI contrast agents, fluorescent dyes) along with therapeutic drugs for real-time tracking of drug delivery and efficacy.

Environmentally responsive dendrimers

Designing dendrimers that respond to specific environmental stimuli such as pH, temperature, or light to release drugs or change their behavior. These smart dendrimers can be used for controlled and on-demand drug release in targeted regions, like acidic tumor microenvironments. pH-sensitive dendrimers that release drugs only in acidic conditions typical of tumor sites.

Dendrimers in vaccine development

Utilizing dendrimers as platforms for vaccine delivery, where antigens or adjuvants are presented in a highly organized manner to enhance immune responses. Dendritic vaccine platforms that enhance the delivery and presentation of antigens to immune cells, potentially improving the efficacy of vaccines against infectious diseases and cancers.

Dendrimers for antimicrobial and antiviral applications

Developing dendrimers with inherent antimicrobial properties or those that can deliver antimicrobial agents to combat resistant bacteria and viruses. Surface modification with quaternary ammonium groups or silver nanoparticles to enhance antimicrobial activity. Dendrimers are being tested as potential agents to inhibit viral infections, including HIV and SARS-CoV-2.

Dendrimers in regenerative medicine

Using dendrimers to deliver growth factors, cytokines, or other signaling molecules to promote tissue regeneration and repair. Dendrimers are being explored for their potential to enhance wound healing, bone regeneration, and nerve repair. Dendrimers functionalized with peptides or growth factors to promote stem cell differentiation and tissue regeneration.

Nanocomposite materials and dendrimer-based hydrogels

Integrating dendrimers into nanocomposites and hydrogels for advanced material applications in drug delivery, tissue engineering, and environmental sensing. Development of dendrimer-based hydrogels with tunable mechanical properties and drug release profiles. Dendrimer-based hydrogels that can encapsulate and release therapeutic agents in response to specific stimuli for wound care or localized drug delivery.

Green chemistry approaches

Developing eco-friendly synthesis methods for dendrimers, reducing the use of hazardous solvents and reagents. Utilizing microwave-assisted synthesis, solvent-free methods, and biodegradable starting materials. Synthesis of dendrimers using water as a solvent or using renewable resources as building blocks.

Dendrimers in personalized medicine

Tailoring dendrimer-based drug delivery systems to individual patients' genetic and molecular profiles for more effective and personalized therapies. Personalized dendrimer-drug conjugates that deliver targeted therapies based on a patient's specific disease markers or genetic makeup.

Conclusion:

The field of dendrimer research is moving toward more sophisticated, multifunctional, and biocompatible systems, with a growing emphasis on clinical applications and sustainable development. These emerging trends suggest that dendrimers will play a crucial role in the future of nanomedicine, drug delivery, and advanced material science.

References:

1. Saluja, V., Mishra, Y., Mishra, V., Giri, N., & Nayak, P. (2021). Dendrimers based cancer nanotheranostics: An overview. *International Journal of Pharmaceutics*, *600*, 120485.
2. Das, N., Sharma, P. A., Seth, A., Maheshwari, R., Tekade, M., Shrivastava, S. K., & Tekade, R. K. (2018). An overview of dendrimers and their biomedical applications. In *Dendrimers for Drug Delivery* (pp. 135-206).
3. Aravind, M., Kumar, S. P., & Begum, A. S. (2023). An overview of dendrimers as novel carriers in drug delivery. *Research Journal of Pharmacy and Technology*, *16*(4), 2051-2056.
4. Nahar, L., & Sarker, S. D. (2017). Importance of nanotechnology in drug delivery. *Journal of Pharmaceutical Research*, *1*(5), 000130.
5. Maiti, P. K., Çagın, T., Wang, G., & Goddard, W. A. (2004). Structure of PAMAM dendrimers: Generations 1 through 11. *Macromolecules, 37*(16), 6236-6254.
6. Bosko, J. T., Todd, B. D., & Sadus, R. J. (2004). Internal structure of dendrimers in the melt under shear: A molecular dynamics study. *The Journal of Chemical Physics*, *121*(2), 1091-1096.
7. Gupta, A., Dubey, S., & Mishra, M. (2018). Unique structures, properties, and applications of dendrimers. *Journal of Drug Delivery and Therapeutics*, *8*(6-s), 328-339.
8. Jain, K., Jain, N. K., & Kesharwani, P. (2021). Types of dendrimers. In *Dendrimer-based nanotherapeutics* (pp. 95-123). Academic Press.
9. Baig, T., Nayak, J., Dwivedi, V., Singh, A., Srivastava, A., & Tripathi, P. K. (2015). A review about dendrimers: Synthesis, types, characterization, and applications. *International Journal of Advances in Pharmacy, Biology and Chemistry, 4*(1), 44-59.
10. Rajora, A., & Nagpal, K. (2021). Classification and types of dendrimers: Introduction and chemistry. In *Dendrimers in Nanomedicine* (pp. 53-75). CRC Press.
11. Corrales, D. G., Rojas, N. F., Vindas, G. S., Muñoz, M. S., Rojas, M. C., Brenes, D. M., Salas, M. F., & Redondo, G. M. (2022). Dendrimers and their applications. *Journal of Drug Delivery and Therapeutics*, *12*(1-S), 151-158.

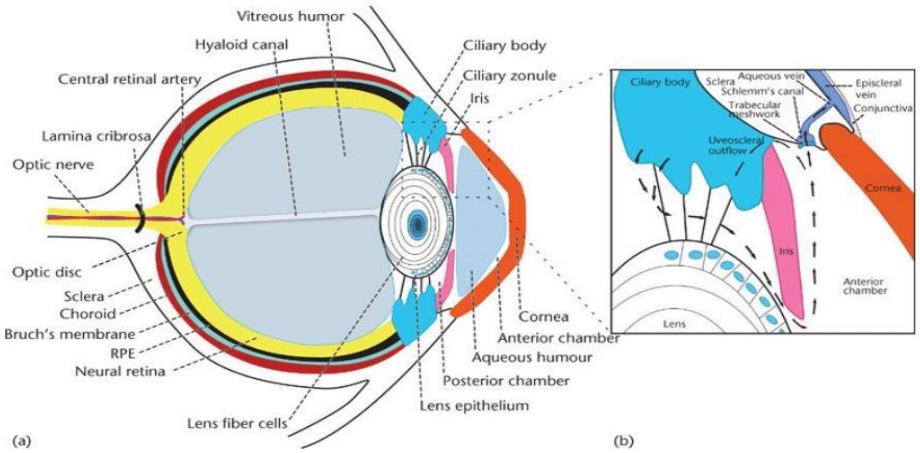
12. Vögtle, F., Gestermann, S., Hesse, R., Schwierz, H., & Windisch, B. (2000). Functional dendrimers. *Progress in Polymer Science*, *25*(7), 987-1041.
13. Séverac, M., Leclaire, J., Sutra, P., Caminade, A. M., & Majoral, J. P. (2004). A new way for the internal functionalization of dendrimers. *Tetrahedron Letters*, *45*(15), 3019-3022.
14. Hecht, S. (2003). Functionalizing the interior of dendrimers: Synthetic challenges and applications. *Journal of Polymer Science Part A: Polymer Chemistry*, *41*(8), 1047-1058.
15. Newkome, G. R., Weis, C. D., Moorefield, C. N., & Weis, I. (1997). Detection and functionalization of dendrimers possessing free carboxylic acid moieties. *Macromolecules*, *30*(8), 2300-2304.
16. Lin, Q., Jiang, G., & Tong, K. (2010). Dendrimers in drug-delivery applications. *Designed Monomers and Polymers*, *13*(4), 301-324.
17. Noriega-Luna, B., Godínez, L. A., Rodríguez, F. J., Rodriguez, A., Zaldívar-Lelo de Larrea, G., Sosa-Ferreyra, C. F., Mercado-Curiel, R. F., Manríquez, J., & Bustos, E. (2014). Applications of dendrimers in drug delivery agents, diagnosis, therapy, and detection. *Journal of Nanomaterials*, *2014*(1), 507273.
18. Punagoti, R. A., Vasam, M., & Mourya, R. (2022). Applications of dendrimers in drug delivery systems. In *Smart Nanomaterials in Biomedical Applications* (pp. 373-388). Springer International Publishing.
19. Pan, J., Attia, S. A., Filipczak, N., & Torchilin, V. P. (2020). Dendrimers for drug delivery purposes. In *Nanoengineered Biomaterials for Advanced Drug Delivery* (pp. 201-242). Elsevier.
20. Svenson, S. (2009). Dendrimers as versatile platforms in drug delivery applications. *European Journal of Pharmaceutics and Biopharmaceutics*, *71*(3), 445-462.
21. Chabre, Y. M., & Roy, R. (2008). Recent trends in glycodendrimer syntheses and applications. *Current Topics in Medicinal Chemistry*, *8*(14), 1237-1285.
22. Boas, U., & Heegaard, P. M. (2004). Dendrimers in drug research. *Chemical Society Reviews*, *33*(1), 43-63.

SMART SIGHT: HOW TELEMEDICINE AND DEVICES ARE SHAPING THE FUTURE OF EYE CARE

Sheetal Sunil Sanaki
Pillai College of Arts, Commerce and Science, Navi Mumbai
Corresponding author E-mail: sheetalsunil13@gmail.com

Introduction:

The health of the eye lens is fundamental for maintaining clear and sharp vision, as it is essential in focusing light onto the retina to produce accurate and vivid images. Located behind the iris, the lens is a transparent and flexible structure that adjusts its shape to accommodate varying distances, allowing the eye to see both near and far objects with clarity. The lens naturally ages, which may have an effect on how well it functions. One significant change is decreased flexibility, leading to presbyopia. This age-related condition typically becomes noticeable around the age of 40, causing difficulty in focusing on close objects. Individuals may find themselves holding reading materials further away and experiencing eye strain, which can affect daily activities and overall quality of life. In addition to reduced flexibility, the lens is susceptible to clouding, a condition known as cataracts. Cataracts develop gradually over time and lead to the lens becoming opaque, obstructing light and causing blurred or dimmed vision. This condition is most prevalent among older adults and can progress to the point where it impairs daily functioning, often necessitating surgical intervention to replace the clouded lens with an artificial one. Cataracts not only affect vision but also impact one's ability to perform everyday tasks, making early detection and management critical.

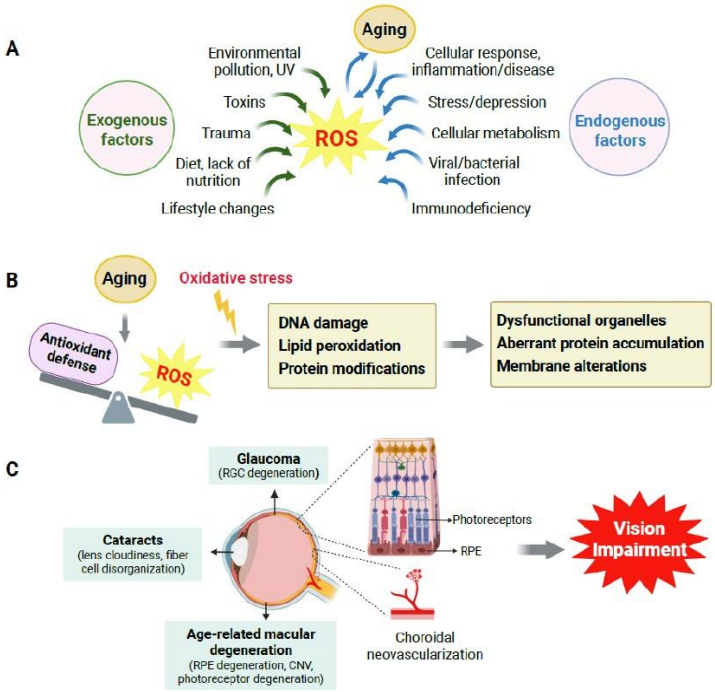


Schematic of a vertebrate eye. (a) Basic structures of the vertebrate eye have been colour coded. (b) Magnification of the anterior part of the eye, depicting the structures involved in aqueous humour circulation.

Source: https://www.researchgate.net/figure/Schematic-of-a-vertebrate-eye-a-Basic-structures-of-the-vertebrate-eye-have-been_fig2_277708055

Oxidative stress from free radicals, which are unstable molecules generated by factors such as ultraviolet (UV) radiation, smoking, and environmental pollution, also plays a significant role in lens health. Free radicals can damage lens cells and contribute to the formation of

cataracts. To counteract this damage, a diet rich in antioxidants is highly beneficial. Essential nutrients such as vitamins C and E, beta-carotene, lutein, and zeaxanthin have been shown to protect the lens from oxidative stress. Vitamin C, found in citrus fruits and bell peppers, and vitamin E, present in nuts and green leafy vegetables, help neutralize free radicals. Beta-carotene, available in carrots and sweet potatoes, supports overall eye health, while lutein and zeaxanthin, found in kale, corn, and eggs, filter harmful blue light and protect the lens. Lifestyle choices also play a critical role in maintaining lens health. Wearing UV-protective sunglasses helps shield the lens from harmful UV radiation, reducing the risk of cataracts. Avoiding smoking is important, as tobacco use accelerates oxidative stress and increases the likelihood of developing cataracts. Additionally, managing chronic health conditions like diabetes is crucial, as elevated blood sugar levels can contribute to lens damage and cataract formation.



Source: https://www.mdpi.com/2076-3921/12/7/1379

Regular eye examinations are essential for early detection and management of lens-related conditions. Through comprehensive eye exams, eye care professionals can identify changes in lens health and provide appropriate interventions to preserve visual clarity. By adopting a holistic approach that includes a balanced diet, healthy lifestyle choices, and routine eye care, individuals can effectively support lens health and maintain clear, effective vision throughout their lives.

Role of telemedicine

Telemedicine is transforming eye care by enhancing accessibility, convenience, and efficiency in diagnosis and management. Its role is pivotal in addressing various challenges and improving patient outcomes in eye care.

Source: https://www.frontiersin.org/files/Articles/646506/fmed-08-646506-HTML/image_m/fmed-08-646506-g001.jpg

1. Increasing accessibility to specialized care:

Telemedicine significantly increases access to specialized eye care, especially for individuals in remote or underserved areas. Traditional eye care often requires patients to travel long distances to see specialists, which can be burdensome and expensive. Telemedicine bridges this gap by allowing patients to consult with ophthalmologists and optometrists via video calls, online consultations, or mobile apps. This virtual access means that individuals who might otherwise have limited or no access to specialized care can now receive expert evaluations and recommendations without the need for extensive travel. This is particularly beneficial in rural areas or regions with a shortage of eye care professionals, thereby promoting equity in health care access.

2. Benefits of remote monitoring and diagnosis:

Telemedicine offers several advantages in remote monitoring and diagnosis of eye conditions:

2.1. Early detection and timely intervention:

Through telemedicine, patients can use remote monitoring tools to track changes in their vision or capture images of their eyes for evaluation. These tools can help detect eye conditions such as diabetic retinopathy, glaucoma, and macular degeneration at an early stage. Timely intervention can be vital in halting the progression of the disease and protecting vision, as early detection makes this possible. Timely intervention can be vital in halting the progression of the disease and protecting vision, as early detection makes this possible.

2.2 Convenience and efficiency:

Remote monitoring reduces the need for frequent in-person visits, which can be particularly advantageous for patients with mobility issues or busy schedules. It allows for more flexible management of eye conditions, as patients can conduct follow-up consultations and

assessments from home. This convenience not only saves time but also reduces associated travel costs and logistical challenges.

2.3 Continuous care and management:

Telemedicine supports ongoing management of chronic eye conditions by enabling regular check-ins and remote evaluations. Continuous monitoring helps in adjusting treatment plans as needed and addressing any issues that arise between scheduled visits. This consistent oversight can lead to better management of conditions and improved patient outcomes.

2.4 Enhanced patient education:

Platforms for telemedicine frequently come with tools and resources for patient education. Eye care professionals can use virtual consultations to explain conditions, treatment options, and preventive measures. Improved patient education helps individuals make informed decisions about their eye health and adhere to prescribed treatments.

2.5 Access to expertise:

Telemedicine facilitates access to leading eye care specialists who may not be available locally. Patients can benefit from consultations with experts in specific fields of ophthalmology, regardless of their geographic location. This is particularly valuable for managing complex or rare eye conditions that require specialized knowledge and advanced care.

Importance of medical device

Medical devices play a crucial role in advancing eye care by significantly enhancing precision in both diagnosis and treatment. Sophisticated tools such as high-resolution imaging systems, optical coherence tomography (OCT), and automated perimetry offer detailed views of the eye's internal structures, which are essential for diagnosing complex conditions with high accuracy. These devices enable eye care professionals to detect abnormalities at earlier stages, tailor treatment plans with greater precision, and monitor disease progression more effectively. For instance, OCT provides cross-sectional images of the retina, allowing for the assessment of conditions like macular degeneration and diabetic retinopathy at a microscopic level, which is vital for implementing timely interventions and preventing vision loss.

Source: https://eyetechmedicalinstrument.com/gallery/

The integration of these medical devices with telemedicine further amplifies their benefits, creating a more comprehensive and accessible approach to eye care. By linking advanced diagnostic tools with telemedicine platforms, eye care professionals can remotely assess patients using real-time data collected from home-based devices. This integration allows for continuous monitoring of chronic conditions such as glaucoma or diabetic retinopathy without necessitating frequent in-person visits. Patients can use home imaging devices to capture eye images or track visual symptoms, which are then transmitted to specialists for review and analysis. This seamless connection enhances the ability to provide personalized care and timely adjustments to treatment plans, improving patient outcomes and engagement. Moreover, the combination of remote monitoring and telemedicine facilitates early detection and intervention, reduces the need for travel, and optimizes the management of eye conditions, making highquality eye care more accessible and efficient.

Telemedicine in eye lens care

1. Remote consultations for eye lens conditions:

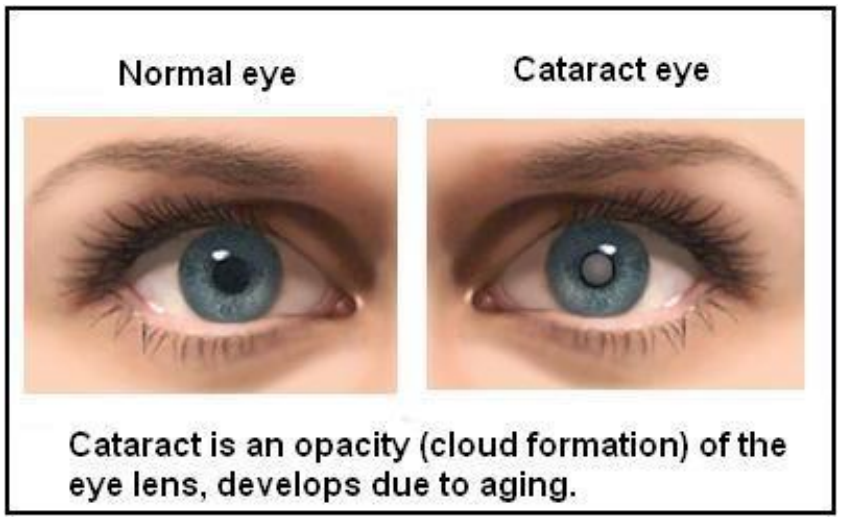
Teleconsultations have transformed the landscape of eye lens care by facilitating early diagnosis and effective management of lens-related conditions. By using video calls and online platforms, patients can connect with eye care professionals from the comfort of their homes. This remote access is particularly advantageous for individuals who live in remote areas or have mobility issues, allowing them to receive specialized care without the need for longdistance travel. Early diagnosis is one of the most significant benefits of teleconsultations. Patients presenting symptoms such as blurred vision, difficulty focusing, or changes in visual acuity can quickly consult with an ophthalmologist or optometrist. Through virtual consultations, eye care professionals can assess these symptoms, review patient history, and recommend preliminary tests or treatments. For instance, if a patient reports difficulty reading up close, the doctor can suspect presbyopia and recommend appropriate corrective lenses or suggest lifestyle modifications. This timely intervention can prevent the progression of conditions and improve overall visual health.

2. Case studies/examples of successful telemedicine interventions:

Several case studies illustrate the effectiveness of telemedicine in eye care. For example, a study conducted in rural India demonstrated that teleophthalmology consultations significantly increased access to eye care and improved outcomes for patients with cataracts. In this study, remote consultations allowed patients to receive preliminary evaluations and referrals to local clinics for surgery, reducing the need for extensive travel and wait times. Another example is a telemedicine program in the United States that focused on diabetic retinopathy. By using remote consultations and imaging, the program enabled patients to have their retinal images reviewed by specialists without needing an in-person visit. This approach led to earlier detection of diabetic retinopathy and better management of the condition, highlighting the potential of telemedicine to enhance eye care delivery.

3. Tele-screening for cataracts and other lens disorders:

Tele-screening leverages remote imaging and artificial intelligence (AI) tools to detect cataracts and other lens disorders at an early stage. Remote imaging devices, such as digital retinal cameras and optical coherence tomography (OCT) machines, allow patients to capture detailed images of their lenses and retina from home. These images are then analyzed by AI algorithms or reviewed by eye care professionals to identify signs of cataracts, lens opacities, or other abnormalities.



Source: https://aprilseventheblog.blogspot.com/2015/08/cataracts-types-symptoms-and-all-you.html

Artificial intelligence (AI) tools improve tele-screening's precision and effectiveness by automating the examination of image data. For example, AI algorithms can detect subtle changes in lens transparency or early signs of cataract formation, which might be missed by human observers. This capability enables early intervention and helps prioritize patients who require immediate attention. However, there are challenges associated with tele-screening. High-quality imaging equipment is essential for accurate results, and not all patients may have access to such devices. Additionally, ensuring the reliability and accuracy of AI tools is crucial, as false positives or negatives could impact patient outcomes. Addressing data security and patient privacy is also a significant concern, as sensitive health information must be protected during transmission and storage.

4. Follow-up and post-surgical care:

Telemedicine is increasingly used to manage post-cataract surgery and other lens-related procedures, offering several benefits for both patients and healthcare providers. After cataract surgery, patients typically require regular follow-ups to monitor healing, assess visual recovery, and address any complications. Telemedicine facilitates these follow-ups through virtual consultations, where patients can discuss their progress, report any issues, and receive guidance on post-operative care. Virtual follow-ups reduce the need for in-person visits, making it easier for patients to adhere to their care plans. For example, patients can upload images of their eyes, report symptoms, and receive feedback from their eye care professionals without traveling to a

clinic. This approach not only saves time and travel costs but also ensures that patients receive timely advice and intervention if any issues arise.

Case studies have shown that virtual follow-ups can effectively monitor recovery and address complications, leading to positive outcomes and high patient satisfaction. However, challenges include ensuring that patients have the necessary technology and understanding how to use it. Additionally, managing technical issues with telemedicine platforms and ensuring effective communication during virtual visits are important for maintaining the quality of care.

Medical device for eye lens care

Medical devices play a crucial role in the diagnosis, treatment, and management of eye lens conditions, enhancing precision and improving patient outcomes. Here's a detailed overview of various medical devices used in eye lens care:

1. Diagnostic imaging devices:

1.1. Slit lamp cameras: Remote imaging and teleconsultation use:

Slit lamp cameras are essential tools in ophthalmology, providing detailed images of the anterior segment of the eye, including the lens. These gadgets provide accurate imaging of the internal anatomy of the eye by combining a high-resolution camera with a slit lamp microscope. In the context of remote imaging and teleconsultation, slit lamp cameras enable eye care professionals to capture and transmit detailed images of the lens and other eye structures to specialists, facilitating remote evaluations. Through teleconsultation platforms, images obtained with slit lamp cameras can be shared with ophthalmologists or optometrists who review the images remotely. This process supports the diagnosis and management of various lens conditions, including cataracts and lens opacities. For example, a patient in a remote area can have their lens imaged locally and then have these images reviewed by a specialist in a different location, enabling timely diagnosis and treatment recommendations without requiring travel. This capability enhances access to specialized care, especially for patients in underserved or geographically isolated regions.

Source: https://www.jhoptical.com/S350-DC.html

1.2. Wavefront aberrometers: Measuring lens aberrations remotely:

Wavefront aberrometers are advanced diagnostic devices used to measure optical aberrations in the eye, including those affecting the lens. These aberrations, such as spherical aberration and higher-order aberrations, can impact visual quality and clarity. Traditional wavefront aberrometers are typically used in clinical settings, but their integration into telemedicine is expanding. Remote measurement of lens aberrations using wavefront aberrometers involves capturing detailed optical data from the patient, which can then be transmitted to eye care professionals for analysis. This remote capability is particularly useful for customizing vision correction treatments, such as laser refractive surgeries or advanced contact lenses. By providing precise data on lens aberrations, wavefront aberrometers help in tailoring interventions to improve visual outcomes. The challenge lies in ensuring the accuracy of measurements and the availability of suitable devices for patients to use at home or in remote settings.

Source: https://www.jaiboeye.com/technology

1.3. Portable ophthalmic imaging devices: Use in telemedicine:

Portable ophthalmic imaging devices, such as handheld fundus cameras and mobile OCT units, are increasingly used in telemedicine to provide remote eye care. These devices offer the advantage of being compact and user-friendly, allowing for imaging and diagnostics outside traditional clinical settings. In telemedicine, portable devices enable patients to capture images of their eyes, including the lens and retina, and send them to eye care professionals for evaluation. For instance, a handheld fundus camera can be used to capture images of the lens and retina, which are then transmitted for remote analysis. This approach facilitates early detection and management of lens-related conditions, such as cataracts and retinal disorders, without the need for in-person visits. The integration of portable imaging devices with telemedicine platforms enhances access to care, particularly in underserved areas, but requires ensuring the quality of images and the reliability of data transmission.

Source: https://www.jaiboeye.com/technology

2. Surgical devices:

2.1. Phacoemulsification machines: Remote monitoring of cataract surgeries:

Phacoemulsification machines are the primary devices used in cataract surgery to break up and remove the cloudy lens and replace it with an artificial intraocular lens (IOL). Advances in telemedicine have introduced the possibility of remote monitoring of cataract surgeries performed with these machines. Remote monitoring involves using sensors and digital systems integrated with the phacoemulsification equipment to track surgical parameters such as power settings, fluid dynamics, and lens fragmentation. Surgeons and medical teams can monitor these parameters in real time from a remote location, allowing for adjustments during surgery and ensuring that the procedure is performed within optimal safety and efficiency ranges. This capability enhances surgical precision, provides additional oversight, and supports surgical training and quality control.

Source: https://www.ritingoyal.com/cataract-surgical.php

2.2. Femtosecond lasers: Advanced surgical devices for lens-related procedures:

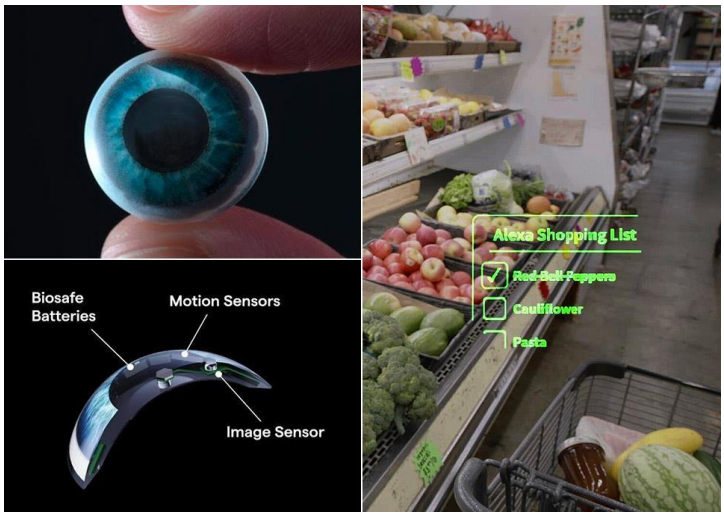
Femtosecond lasers are used in various eye surgeries, including cataract and refractive procedures. These lasers offer precise control over surgical processes such as corneal incisions, lens fragmentation, and capsulotomy (opening of the lens capsule). In telemedicine, femtosecond lasers can be monitored remotely to ensure that procedures are performed with high accuracy. The integration of remote monitoring systems with femtosecond lasers allows for real-time observation of laser parameters and surgical progress, facilitating remote guidance and oversight by experienced specialists. This capability is particularly valuable for complex cases or when training less experienced surgeons. The precision of femtosecond lasers, combined with remote monitoring, enhances surgical outcomes and reduces the risk of complications.

Source: https://www.pngfind.com/mpng/hRRRbx_visumax-laser-zeiss-visumax-femtosecond-system-hd-png/

3. Vision correction devices:

3.1. Smart contact lenses: Monitoring eye health and providing real-time data:

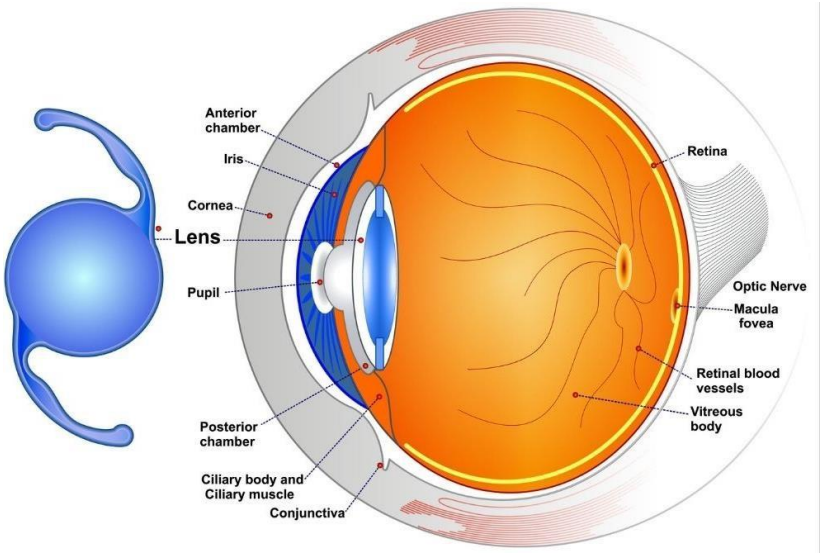
Smart contact lenses are an emerging technology that integrates sensors and electronics into traditional contact lenses. These lenses can monitor various aspects of eye health, including intraocular pressure, glucose levels, and lens wear patterns. In telemedicine, smart contact lenses offer real-time data on eye health, which can be transmitted to eye care professionals for continuous monitoring. For example, lenses equipped with sensors can measure intraocular pressure and send this data to a remote monitoring system, allowing for early detection of conditions like glaucoma. This continuous data collection helps in personalizing vision correction treatments and managing eye health more effectively.



Source: https://www.techeblog.com/mojo-vision-augmented-reality-smart-contact-lens-alexa/

3.2. Intraocular Lenses (IOLs): Telemedicine integration in pre- and post-IOL implantation care:

Intraocular lenses (IOLs) are artificial lenses implanted during cataract surgery to replace the cloudy natural lens. The integration of telemedicine in IOL care includes preoperative assessments and postoperative follow-ups. Preoperatively, telemedicine platforms can facilitate remote consultations to assess patient suitability for IOL implantation, review surgical options, and plan the appropriate type of IOL based on the patient's needs. Postoperatively, patients can use telemedicine for virtual follow-ups, where eye care professionals can monitor recovery, address any complications, and adjust treatments as needed. This integration improves patient convenience, enhances access to care, and ensures comprehensive management throughout the IOL implantation process.



Source: https://www.apollospectra.com/mumbai/chembur/treatment/iol-surgery

4. Integration of telemedicine and medical devices:

4.1. Connected devices and remote monitoring:

The integration of telemedicine with medical devices revolutionizes eye care by enabling realtime data transmission and remote monitoring. Connected devices, such as smart retinal cameras, portable OCT machines, and home-based imaging systems, collect detailed diagnostic information from patients. These devices are equipped with digital interfaces that allow them to transmit data to healthcare providers through secure online platforms.

For instance, a patient using a home-based OCT device can capture high-resolution images of their retina and lens, which are then sent to their ophthalmologist for remote assessment. This seamless data transmission allows for timely diagnoses and adjustments to treatment plans without the need for frequent in-person visits.

4.2. Case studies of successful integration in eye care:

One notable case study involves a teleophthalmology program in rural areas of the United States, where connected devices were used to perform remote retinal imaging and diagnostics. This program successfully identified patients with diabetic retinopathy and other eye conditions,

allowing for early intervention and treatment. The use of connected devices enabled healthcare providers to monitor patients' conditions remotely and coordinate care more effectively.

Another example is the integration of remote monitoring systems for cataract surgery. In a study conducted in a large medical centre, surgeons used connected phacoemulsification machines equipped with real-time data transmission capabilities. The ability to monitor surgical parameters remotely ensured that procedures were conducted within optimal safety ranges and facilitated real-time adjustments, leading to improved surgical outcomes.

3.1. Smart contact lenses: Monitoring eye health and providing real-time data:

Smart contact lenses are an emerging technology that integrates sensors and electronics into traditional contact lenses. These lenses can monitor various aspects of eye health, including intraocular pressure, glucose levels, and lens wear patterns. In telemedicine, smart contact lenses offer real-time data on eye health, which can be transmitted to eye care professionals for continuous monitoring. For example, lenses equipped with sensors can measure intraocular pressure and send this data to a remote monitoring system, allowing for early detection of conditions like glaucoma. This continuous data collection helps in personalizing vision correction treatments and managing eye health more effectively.

Source: https://www.linkedin.com/pulse/smart-contact-lenses-industry-application-muhammed-hamdan

3.2. Intraocular Lenses (IOLs): Telemedicine integration in pre- and post-IOL implantation care:

Intraocular lenses (IOLs) are artificial lenses implanted during cataract surgery to replace the cloudy natural lens. Preoperative evaluations and postoperative follow-ups are part of the telemedicine integration in IOL care. Preoperatively, telemedicine platforms can facilitate remote consultations to assess patient suitability for IOL implantation, review surgical options, and plan the appropriate type of IOL based on the patient's needs. Postoperatively, patients can use telemedicine for virtual follow-ups, where eye care professionals can monitor recovery, address any complications, and adjust treatments as needed. This integration improves patient convenience, enhances access to care, and ensures comprehensive management throughout the IOL implantation process.

Source: https://eyewiki.org/Single_Piece_Intraocular_Lenses

4. Integration of telemedicine and medical devices:

4.1. Connected devices and remote monitoring:

The integration of telemedicine with medical devices revolutionizes eye care by enabling realtime data transmission and remote monitoring. Connected devices, such as smart retinal cameras, portable OCT machines, and home-based imaging systems, collect detailed diagnostic information from patients. These devices are equipped with digital interfaces that allow them to transmit data to healthcare providers through secure online platforms.

For instance, a patient using a home-based OCT device can capture high-resolution images of their retina and lens, which are then sent to their ophthalmologist for remote assessment. There is no need for frequent in-person visits because of this smooth data transmission, which enables prompt diagnosis and treatment plan modifications.

4.2. Case studies of successful integration in eye care:

One notable case study involves a teleophthalmology program in rural areas of the United States, where connected devices were used to perform remote retinal imaging and diagnostics. This program successfully identified patients with diabetic retinopathy and other eye conditions, allowing for early intervention and treatment. Healthcare professionals were able to better coordinate patient care and keep an eye on patients' situations from a distance thanks to the utilisation of connected gadgets.

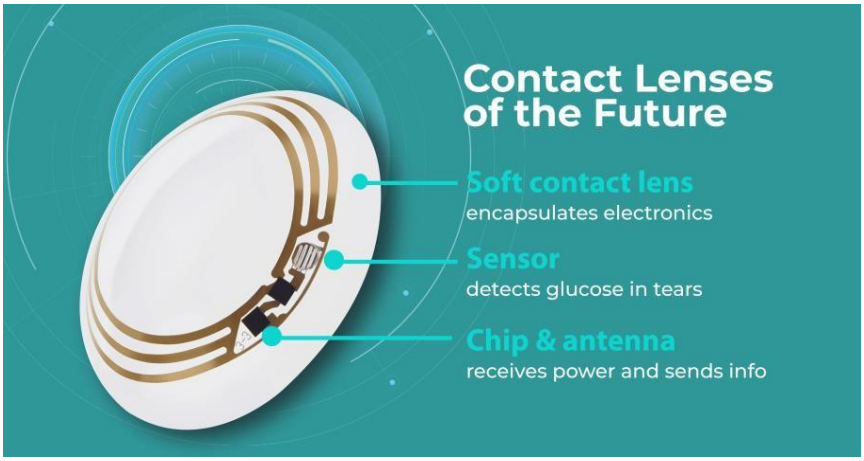
The incorporation of remote monitoring devices for cataract surgery is another illustration. In a study conducted in a large medical centre, surgeons used connected phacoemulsification machines equipped with real-time data transmission capabilities. The ability to monitor surgical parameters remotely ensured that procedures were conducted within optimal safety ranges and facilitated real-time adjustments, leading to improved surgical outcomes.

Artificial intelligence and machine learning

1. Use of AI in analyzing lens conditions remotely:

By improving diagnostic efficiency and accuracy, artificial intelligence (AI) and machine learning (ML) are revolutionizing remote lens condition analysis. AI algorithms can analyze images obtained from diagnostic devices, such as OCT or retinal cameras, to detect abnormalities and predict disease progression. For example, AI models can identify early signs

of cataracts or lens opacities by analyzing patterns in imaging data that may not be easily visible to the human eye.



Source: https://www.altris.ai/article/new-technology-in-optometry-how-will-optometry-practice-look-in-2040/

In remote consultations, AI tools can assist ophthalmologists by providing automated analysis of lens images, flagging potential issues for further review. This technology streamlines the diagnostic process, reduces the workload for healthcare professionals, and enables more consistent and objective assessments of lens conditions.

2. Predictive analytics for eye lens health monitoring:

Predictive analytics, powered by AI and ML, can forecast potential changes in eye lens health based on historical data and current diagnostic results. By analyzing patterns in patient data, such as visual acuity measurements, lens imaging, and other health indicators, predictive models can estimate the likelihood of developing conditions like cataracts or presbyopia.

These insights enable proactive management of eye health by identifying individuals at high risk for specific lens conditions and suggesting preventive measures or early interventions. Predictive analytics can also help in personalizing treatment plans, optimizing surgical outcomes, and improving overall patient care.

3. Challenges and opportunities:

3.1. Technical and regulatory challenges:

The integration of telemedicine with medical devices presents several technical and regulatory challenges. Technically, ensuring the compatibility of various devices with telemedicine platforms requires standardized protocols and secure data transmission methods. Devices must be capable of generating high-quality data and integrating seamlessly with digital health records.

Regulatory challenges include compliance with healthcare regulations and data protection laws, such as HIPAA in the United States or GDPR in Europe. Ensuring patient privacy and data security while using connected devices and telemedicine platforms is critical. Additionally, obtaining regulatory approvals for new medical devices and telemedicine solutions can be complex and time-consuming.

3.2. Future trends and innovations:

Future trends in the integration of telemedicine and medical devices are likely to focus on enhancing connectivity, data analysis, and patient engagement. Innovations may include:

- **Wearable technology**: Advanced wearable devices for continuous monitoring of eye health, such as smart contact lenses with embedded sensors, could become more prevalent.
- **Improved AI algorithms**: Enhanced AI models for more accurate and real-time analysis of eye conditions, leading to better diagnostic and predictive capabilities.
- **Enhanced data integration**: More sophisticated systems for integrating data from multiple devices and sources, providing a comprehensive view of patient health and streamlining care coordination.
- **Telemedicine expansion**: Increased adoption of telemedicine in various healthcare settings, including primary care and specialized clinics, to improve access and efficiency in managing eye lens conditions.

Regulatory and ethical considerations

1. Regulatory landscape for telemedicine and medical devices:

1.1. Overview of current regulations:

The regulatory landscape for telemedicine and medical devices is multifaceted and varies by country. In general, regulations aim to ensure the safety, efficacy, and privacy of healthcare services and devices. Key regulatory bodies include the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA), the European Medicines Agency (EMA), and other national and international organizations.

- **United States:** In the U.S., telemedicine is regulated by a combination of federal and state laws. The FDA oversees medical devices, including those used in telemedicine, ensuring they meet safety and performance standards. Additionally, the Centers for Medicare & Medicaid Services (CMS) sets policies for telemedicine reimbursement and coverage.
- **International:** The International Medical Device Regulators Forum (IMDRF) and other international bodies work towards harmonizing regulations for medical devices, including those used in telemedicine, to facilitate global market access and ensure safety.

1.2. Compliance requirements for medical devices used in telemedicine:

- Medical devices used in telemedicine must comply with specific requirements to ensure they are safe and effective. These requirements include.
- **Device classification**: Devices are classified based on their risk level (e.g., Class I, II, or III in the U.S.) and must meet corresponding regulatory requirements for pre-market approval, clinical testing, and post-market surveillance.

  Quality Management Systems (QMS): Manufacturers must implement a QMS to ensure consistent device quality and compliance with regulatory standards.

- **Data security and privacy:** Devices must ensure secure data transmission and storage, adhering to standards like HIPAA or GDPR. This entails putting access restrictions, encryption, and frequent security updates into practice.
- **Clinical validation:** Devices must undergo clinical validation to demonstrate their efficacy and accuracy in a telemedicine setting. This often involves rigorous testing and validation studies.

2. Ethical considerations:

2.1. Patient privacy and data security:

Patient privacy and data security are paramount in telemedicine. Ethical considerations include:

- Maintaining patient privacy by making sure that only authorized individuals have access to their personal information. This calls for putting strong encryption and access control mechanisms in place.
- **Data protection:** Compliance with data protection regulations, such as HIPAA in the U.S. or GDPR in Europe, which mandate how patient data should be collected, stored, and used. Telemedicine platforms must adhere to these regulations to protect patient information from unauthorized access or breaches.
- **Informed consent:** Patients must be informed about how their data will be used, stored, and shared. This includes understanding the risks and benefits of telemedicine and giving explicit consent before any remote consultations or data collection.

2.2. Informed consent and patient autonomy in remote care:

Informed consent and patient autonomy are crucial in remote care settings:

- **Informed consent:** Patients must be provided with clear and comprehensive information about the telemedicine services they are receiving, including the nature of the remote consultation, the technology used, and any potential risks or limitations. Consent must be obtained before proceeding with remote care.
- **Patient autonomy:** Patients should have the autonomy to make informed decisions about their care. Providers must respect patient preferences and ensure that remote care does not undermine their ability to make autonomous decisions.

  Access to care: Ethical considerations also involve ensuring equitable access to telemedicine services, avoiding disparities based on factors such as socioeconomic status, geographic location, or technological literacy.

Conclusion:

The integration of telemedicine and advanced medical devices is significantly transforming eye lens care, enhancing accessibility, precision, and efficiency in diagnosis and treatment. Telemedicine improves access to specialized eye care, facilitates remote monitoring and early detection of conditions like cataracts and presbyopia, and supports continuous care and patient education. Advanced medical devices, including diagnostic imaging tools, surgical instruments, and smart technologies, further refine the management of eye lens conditions by providing detailed insights and enabling real-time data transmission. The synergy between telemedicine and these devices offers numerous benefits, such as reducing the need for travel,

enabling timely interventions, and improving patient outcomes. However, challenges related to device quality, data security, and regulatory compliance must be addressed.

The future of eye care will likely see continued innovations in wearable technology, AI-driven diagnostics, and expanded telemedicine applications, all contributing to more personalized and accessible eye health management. Regulatory and ethical considerations are crucial in ensuring the safety, privacy, and efficacy of telemedicine and medical devices. Ensuring compliance with regulations and maintaining patient autonomy and data security are essential for the successful integration of these technologies into eye care.

References:

1. Yuen, J., Pike, S., Khachikyan, S., & Nallasamy, S. (2022, January 26). Telehealth in ophthalmology. In S. L. Linwood (Ed.), *Digital Health*. Brisbane, AU: Exon Publications. Available from https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK580631/
2. Katz, J. A., Karpecki, P. M., Dorca, A., Chiva-Razavi, S., Floyd, H., Barnes, E., & Donnenfeld, E. (2021). Presbyopia – A review of current treatment options and emerging therapies. *Clinical Ophthalmology, 15*, 2167–2178. https://doi.org/10.2147/OPTH.S259011
3. Nizami, A. A., Gurnani, B., & Gulani, A. C. (2024). Cataract. In *StatPearls* [Internet]. Treasure Island (FL): StatPearls Publishing. Available from https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK539699/
4. Katz, J. A., Karpecki, P. M., Dorca, A., Chiva-Razavi, S., Floyd, H., Barnes, E., & Donnenfeld, E. (2021). Presbyopia – A review of current treatment options and emerging therapies. *Clinical Ophthalmology, 15*, 2167–2178. https://doi.org/10.2147/OPTH.S259011
5. Michael, R., & Bron, A. J. (2011). The ageing lens and cataract: A model of normal and pathological ageing. *Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society B: Biological Sciences, 366*(1568), 1278–1292. https://doi.org/10.1098/rstb.2010.0300
6. Ruan, X., Liu, Z., Luo, L., & Liu, Y. (2020). The structure of the lens and its associations with visual quality. *BMJ Open Ophthalmology, 5*(1), e000459. https://doi.org/10.1136/bmjophth-2020-000459
7. Lee, B., Afshari, N. A., & Shaw, P. X. (2023). Oxidative stress and antioxidants in cataract development. *Current Opinion in Ophthalmology*. https://doi.org/10.1097/icu.0000000000001009
8. Kushwah, N., Bora, K., Maurya, M., Pavlovich, M. C., & Chen, J. (2023). Oxidative stress and antioxidants in age-related macular degeneration. *Antioxidants, 12*(7), 1379. https://doi.org/10.3390/antiox12071379
9. Chiu, C., & Taylor, A. (2007). Nutritional antioxidants and age-related cataract and maculopathy. *Experimental Eye Research, 84*(2), 229–245. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.exer.2006.05.015
10. Zhu, J., Zhang, E., & Rio-Tsonis, K. (2012). Eye anatomy. https://doi.org/10.1002/9780470015902.a0000108.pub2

11. Mrowicka, M., Mrowicki, J., Kucharska, E., & Majsterek, I. (2022). Lutein and zeaxanthin and their roles in age-related macular degeneration—Neurodegenerative disease. *Nutrients, 14*(4), 827. https://doi.org/10.3390/nu14040827
12. Ye, J., He, J., Wang, C., Wu, H., Shi, X., Zhang, H., Xie, J., & Lee, S. Y. (2012). Smoking and risk of age-related cataract: A meta-analysis. *Investigative Ophthalmology & Visual Science, 53*(7), 3885-3895. https://doi.org/10.1167/iovs.12-9820
13. Althomali, T., Altowairqi, S., Almulhim, N., & Aldarwish, R. (2023). The impact of ultraviolet radiation on the eyes and the relevant protective measures: Knowledge and awareness.
14. Lim, J. C., Arredondo, M. C., Braakhuis, A. J., & Donaldson, P. J. (2020). Vitamin C and the lens: New insights into delaying the onset of cataract. *Nutrients, 12*(10), 3142. https://doi.org/10.3390/nu12103142
15. Sommer, A. C., & Blumenthal, E. Z. (2020). Telemedicine in ophthalmology in view of the emerging COVID-19 outbreak. *Graefe's Archive for Clinical and Experimental Ophthalmology, 258*(11), 2341–2352. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00417-020-04879-2
16. Than, J., Sim, P. Y., Muttuvelu, D., & colleagues. (2023). Teleophthalmology and retina: A review of current tools, pathways and services. *International Journal of Retina and Vitreous, 9*, 76. https://doi.org/10.1186/s40942-023-00502-8
17. Katz, J. A., Karpecki, P. M., Dorca, A., Chiva-Razavi, S., Floyd, H., Barnes, E., Wuttke, M., & Donnenfeld, E. (2021). Presbyopia—A review of current treatment options and emerging therapies. *Clinical Ophthalmology, 15*, 2167-2178. https://doi.org/10.2147/OPTH.S259011
18. Massie, J., Block, S. S., & Morjaria, P. (2022). The role of optometry in the delivery of eye care via telehealth: A systematic literature review. *Telemedicine and e-Health, 12*(12), 1753-1763. https://doi.org/10.1089/tmj.2021.0537
19. Yuen, J., Pike, S., Khachikyan, S., & others. (2022). Telehealth in ophthalmology. In S. L. Linwood (Ed.), *Digital Health* [Internet]. Brisbane, AU: Exon Publications; Chapter 4. Available from https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK580631/ https://doi.org/10.36255/exon-publications-digitalhealth-telehealth-ophthalmology
20. Than, J., Sim, P. Y., Muttuvelu, D., & others. (2023). Teleophthalmology and retina: A review of current tools, pathways and services. *International Journal of Retina and Vitreous, 9*, 76. https://doi.org/10.1186/s40942-023-00502-8
21. Sreelatha, O. K., & Ramesh, S. V. (2016). Teleophthalmology: Improving patient outcomes? *Clinical Ophthalmology, 10*, 285-295. https://doi.org/10.2147/OPTH.S80487
22. Shen, Y., Chen, L., Yue, W., & Xu, H. (2021). Digital technology-based telemedicine for the COVID-19 pandemic. *Frontiers in Medicine, 8*. https://doi.org/10.3389/fmed.2021.646506
23. Faes, L., Maloca, P. M., Hatz, K., Wolfensberger, T. J., Munk, M. R., Sim, D. A., Bachmann, L. M., & Schmid, M. K. (2022). Transforming ophthalmology in the digital

century—New care models with added value for patients. *Eye, 37*(11), 2172–2175. https://doi.org/10.1038/s41433-022-02313-x

24. Anawade, P. A., Sharma, D., & Gahane, S. (2024). A comprehensive review on exploring the impact of telemedicine on healthcare accessibility. *Cureus, 16*(3), e55996. https://doi.org/10.7759/cureus.55996
25. Li, J.-P. O., Liu, H., Ting, D. S. J., Jeon, S., Chan, R. V. P., Kim, J. E., Sim, D. A., Thomas, P. B. M., Lin, H., Chen, Y., Sakomoto, T., Loewenstein, A., Lam, D. S. C., Pasquale, L. R., Wong, T. Y., Lam, L. A., & Ting, D. S. W. (2021). Digital technology, telemedicine, and artificial intelligence in ophthalmology: A global perspective. *Progress in Retinal and Eye Research, 82*, 100900. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.preteyeres.2020.100900
26. Prathiba, V., & Rema, M. (2011). Teleophthalmology: A model for eye care delivery in rural and underserved areas of India. *International Journal of Family Medicine, 2011*, 683267. https://doi.org/10.1155/2011/683267
27. Cuadros, J. (2016). Development and validation of a deep learning algorithm for detection of diabetic retinopathy in retinal fundus photographs. *JAMA.*
28. Kumar, S., Yogesan, K., Hudson, B., Tay-Kearney, M., & Constable, I. J. (2005). Emergency eye care in rural Australia: Role of internet. *Eye, 20*(12), 1342–1344. https://doi.org/10.1038/sj.eye.6702104
29. Sen, S., Ramasamy, K., Mishra, C., Kannan, N., & Namperumalsamy, P. (2021). Telemedicine in diabetic retinopathy screening in India. *Indian Journal of Ophthalmology, 69*(11), 2977. https://doi.org/10.4103/ijo.ijo_1442_21
30. Gutierrez, L., Lim, J. S., Foo, L. L., Ng, W. Y., Yip, M., Lim, G. Y. S., Wong, M. H. Y., Fong, A., Rosman, M., Mehta, J. S., Lin, H., Ting, D. S. J., & Ting, D. S. W. (2022). Application of artificial intelligence in cataract management: Current and future directions. *Eye and Vision, 9*(1). https://doi.org/10.1186/s40662-021-00273-z
31. Dutt, S., Nagarajan, S., Vadivel, S. S., Baig, A. U., Savoy, F. M., Ganapathy, V. M., Dominic, M., Sivaraman, A., & Rao, D. P. (2021). Design and performance characterization of a novel, smartphone-based, portable digital slit lamp for anterior segment screening using telemedicine. *Translational Vision Science & Technology, 10*(8), 29. https://doi.org/10.1167/tvst.10.8.29
32. Maeda, N. (2009). Clinical applications of wavefront aberrometry: A review. *Clinical and Experimental Ophthalmology, 37*(1), 118–129. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1442-9071.2009.02005.x
33. Woodward, M. A., Bavinger, J. C., Amin, S., Blachley, T. S., Musch, D. C., Lee, P. P., & Newman-Casey, P. A. (2016). Telemedicine for ophthalmic consultation services: Use of a portable device and layering information for graders. *Journal of Telemedicine and Telecare, 23*(2), 365–370. https://doi.org/10.1177/1357633x16634544
34. Rampat, R., Deshmukh, R., Chen, X., Ting, D. S., Said, D. G., Dua, H. S., & Ting, D. S. (2021). Artificial intelligence in cornea, refractive surgery, and cataract: Basic principles,

clinical applications, and future directions. *Asia-Pacific Journal of Ophthalmology, 10*(3), 268–281. https://doi.org/10.1097/apo.0000000000000394

35. Rahbar, M. D., Pappas, G., & Jaber, N. (2024). Toward intraoperative visual intelligence: Real-time surgical instrument segmentation for enhanced surgical monitoring. *Healthcare, 12*(11), 1112. https://doi.org/10.3390/healthcare12111112
36. Maeda, N. (2009b). Clinical applications of wavefront aberrometry: A review. *Clinical and Experimental Ophthalmology, 37*(1), 118–129. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1442-9071.2009.02005.x
37. Chopra, R., Wagner, S. K., & Keane, P. A. (2020). Optical coherence tomography in the 2020s—outside the eye clinic. *Eye, 35*(1), 236–243. https://doi.org/10.1038/s41433-020-01263-6
38. Mamalis, N. (2016). Phacoemulsification technology update. *Journal of Cataract & Refractive Surgery, 42*(5), 651–652. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jcrs.2016.05.001
39. Abouzeid, H., & Ferrini, W. (2014). Femtosecond-laser assisted cataract surgery: A review. *Acta Ophthalmologica, 92*(7), 597–603. https://doi.org/10.1111/aos.12416
40. Zhang, J., Kim, K., Kim, H. J., Meyer, D., Park, W., Lee, S. A., Dai, Y., Kim, B., Moon, H., Shah, J. V., Harris, K. E., Collar, B., Liu, K., Irazoqui, P., Lee, H., Park, S. A., Kollbaum, P. S., Boudouris, B. W., & Lee, C. H. (2022). Smart soft contact lenses for continuous 24-hour monitoring of intraocular pressure in glaucoma care. *Nature Communications, 13*(1). https://doi.org/10.1038/s41467-022-33254-4
41. Wong, S. H., & Tsai, J. C. (2021). Telehealth and screening strategies in the diagnosis and management of glaucoma. *Journal of Clinical Medicine, 10*(16), 3452. https://doi.org/10.3390/jcm10163452
42. Dai, L., Wu, L., Li, H., Cai, C., Wu, Q., Kong, H., Liu, R., Wang, X., Hou, X., Liu, Y., Long, X., Wen, Y., Lu, L., Shen, Y., Chen, Y., Shen, D., Yang, X., Zou, H., Sheng, B., & Jia, W. (2021). A deep learning system for detecting diabetic retinopathy across the disease spectrum. *Nature Communications, 12*(1). https://doi.org/10.1038/s41467-021-23458-5
43. Zhu, Y., Salowe, R., Chow, C., Li, S., Bastani, O., & O'Brien, J. M. (2024). Advancing glaucoma care: Integrating artificial intelligence in diagnosis, management, and progression detection. *Bioengineering, 11*(2), 122. https://doi.org/10.3390/bioengineering11020122
44. Jain, D. (2023). Regulation of digital healthcare in India: Ethical and legal challenges. *Healthcare, 11*(6), 911. https://doi.org/10.3390/healthcare11060911
45. Naik, N., Hameed, B. M. Z., Shetty, D. K., Swain, D., Shah, M., Paul, R., Aggarwal, K., Ibrahim, S., Patil, V., Smriti, K., Shetty, S., Rai, B. P., Chlosta, P., & Somani, B. K. (2022). Legal and ethical considerations in artificial intelligence in healthcare: Who takes responsibility? *Frontiers in Surgery, 9.* https://doi.org/10.3389/fsurg.2022.862322

USE OF MOBILE HEALTH (mHealth) TECHNOLOGIES

G. Sathyavathy[1], G. Umamakeswari[2] and S. Sandhya[3]

[1]Department Medical Surgical Nursing,
Sri Manakula Vinayagar Nursing College, Kalitheerthal Kuppam, Puducherry

[2]Department of Medical Surgical Nursing,
Chettinadu University Health and Science, Chennai

[3]Department of Child Health Nursing,
Sri Manakula Vinayagar Nursing College, Kalitheerthal Kuppam, Puducherry

Corresponding author E-mail: gsathyavathybablu@gmail.com, umakutty10@gmail.com, sandhyavidhya11@gmail.com

Abstract:

Mobile Health (mHealth) technologies are transforming nursing practice by enhancing patient monitoring, care delivery, and workflow efficiency. These technologies, including mobile apps, wearable devices, and telehealth platforms, allow nurses to track vital signs in real-time, manage chronic conditions, and provide remote care. Wearable sensors offer continuous health data, enabling prompt clinical decisions and early interventions. Telehealth facilitates virtual consultations, extending care to remote or underserved populations and reducing geographic barriers. mHealth tools also streamline nursing tasks such as medication management and patient education. Apps assist with medication adherence, while interactive resources empower patients with knowledge about their health. Despite these benefits, challenges such as data security, training needs, and equitable access must be addressed. Overall, mHealth technologies enhance nursing practice by improving patient outcomes, promoting efficiency, and enabling more personalized care.

Keywords: Mobile Health, Technologies, Transforming Nursing, Adherence, Personalized Care

Introduction:

The integration of Mobile Health (mHealth) technologies into nursing practice represents a significant advancement in the way healthcare is delivered and managed. mHealth technologies encompass a variety of tools, including mobile applications, wearable devices, and telehealth platforms, which collectively enhance the capabilities of nurses in patient care, communication, and administrative tasks. These technologies offer real-time monitoring of patient health metrics, streamline workflows, and facilitate remote consultations, thus transforming traditional nursing roles and improving patient outcomes.

In an era where healthcare systems are increasingly focused on efficiency, accessibility, and personalized care, mHealth technologies provide critical support. Wearable devices and mobile apps enable nurses to track vital signs and manage chronic conditions more effectively, allowing for timely interventions and tailored care plans. Telehealth platforms expand access to

healthcare services, particularly for patients in remote or underserved areas, by enabling virtual consultations and reducing barriers to care.

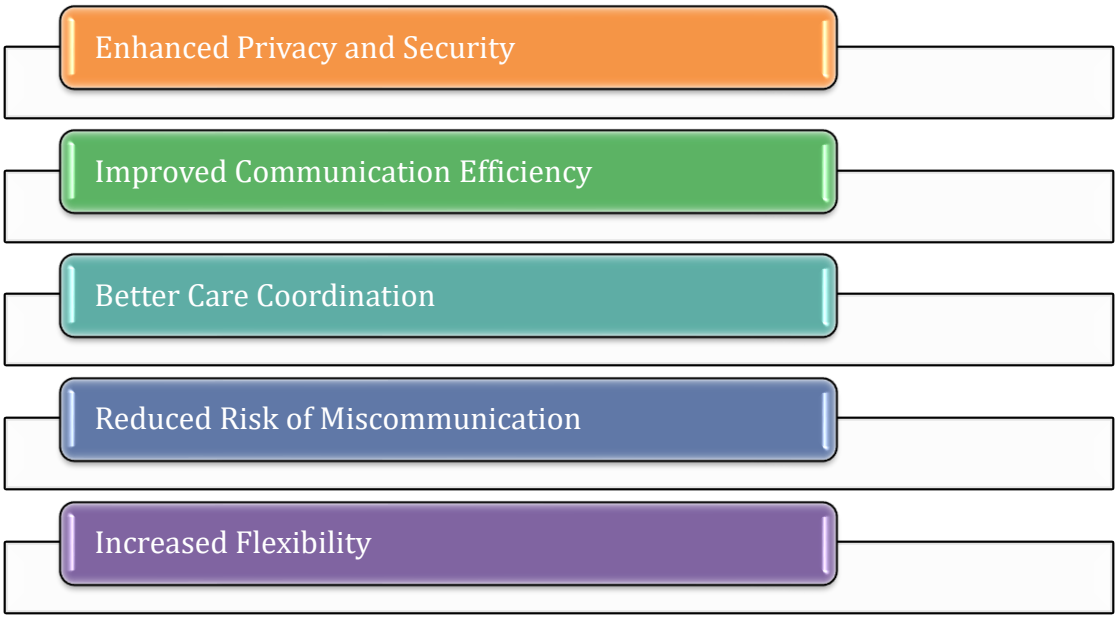
Secure messaging platforms in mobile health technologies

Secure messaging platforms are pivotal in transforming communication within the healthcare sector, particularly for nursing practice. These platforms provide a secure and efficient means for healthcare professionals to exchange information, ensuring confidentiality, compliance, and streamlined workflows. This detailed overview explores the features, benefits, and impact of secure messaging platforms in mobile health (mHealth) technologies.

Features of secure messaging platforms

1. **End-to-end encryption:** End-to-end encryption is a fundamental feature of secure messaging platforms. It ensures that messages are encrypted on the sender's device and can only be decrypted by the intended recipient. This encryption protects sensitive health information from unauthorized access during transmission. Leading platforms like TigerText, Imprivata, and MedPage Today's Secure Messaging prioritize this level of security to safeguard patient data.
2. **Compliance with regulations:** Secure messaging platforms are designed to comply with healthcare regulations such as HIPAA (Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act) in the U.S., GDPR (General Data Protection Regulation) in Europe, and other data protection laws. Compliance features include secure access controls, audit trails, and data retention policies that meet regulatory requirements.
3. **Real-time messaging:** These platforms support real-time communication, allowing healthcare professionals to send and receive messages instantly. This capability is crucial for urgent communications, such as coordinating patient care, sharing critical information, or consulting with colleagues.
4. **Integration with Electronic Health Records (EHRs):** Many secure messaging platforms integrate with EHR systems, enabling seamless access to patient records during communication. This integration allows healthcare providers to reference medical histories, lab results, and treatment plans directly within the messaging platform, improving the efficiency and accuracy of information shared.
5. **Multimedia support:** Secure messaging platforms often support the sharing of multimedia files such as images, videos, and documents. This feature is beneficial for sharing diagnostic images, test results, or patient records securely, facilitating more comprehensive communication among healthcare teams.
6. **Task management and alerts:** Advanced platforms include features for task management and alerts. Healthcare professionals can set reminders, create tasks, and receive notifications related to patient care or administrative duties. These features help ensure that important tasks are completed on time and that critical alerts are not missed.

Benefits of secure messaging platforms



1. **Enhanced privacy and security:** By providing secure communication channels, these platforms protect patient data from breaches and unauthorized access. This enhanced security fosters trust between patients and healthcare providers and ensures compliance with privacy regulations.
2. **Improved communication efficiency:** Secure messaging platforms streamline communication among healthcare teams, reducing the need for phone calls and face-to-face meetings. Real-time messaging and the ability to share information instantly improve coordination and decision-making, leading to more efficient patient care.
3. **Better care coordination:** These platforms facilitate better coordination among healthcare professionals by enabling quick and easy communication. Nurses can efficiently consult with doctors, specialists, and other team members, ensuring that all parties are aligned on patient care plans and updates.
4. **Reduced risk of miscommunication:** The use of secure messaging platforms reduces the risk of miscommunication by providing a clear and documented record of all exchanges. This documentation helps prevent errors and misunderstandings, which is crucial in a fast-paced healthcare environment.
5. **Increased flexibility:** Secure messaging platforms provide healthcare professionals with the flexibility to communicate from various devices, including smartphones, tablets, and computers. This flexibility supports remote work and telehealth services, allowing for more versatile and accessible communication.

Impact on nursing practice

- **Streamlined workflow:** Secure messaging platforms streamline nursing workflows by reducing the time spent on administrative tasks and phone calls. Nurses can quickly communicate with colleagues, access patient information, and manage tasks, leading to increased efficiency and more time for direct patient care.

- **Enhanced patient care:** The ability to communicate securely and in real-time allows nurses to address patient concerns promptly, consult with other healthcare professionals, and coordinate care more effectively. This leads to improved patient outcomes and a more responsive healthcare experience.
- **Improved team collaboration:** Secure messaging platforms foster better collaboration among nursing teams and other healthcare professionals. By providing a unified communication tool, these platforms ensure that all team members are informed and involved in patient care decisions.
- **Increased compliance:** By using secure messaging platforms that comply with regulatory requirements, healthcare organizations can ensure that patient data is handled appropriately and that communication practices adhere to legal standards.

Challenges and considerations

1. **Integration issues:** Integrating secure messaging platforms with existing EHR systems and other healthcare technologies can be complex. Ensuring seamless integration requires careful planning and technical support to address compatibility issues.
2. **Training and adoption:** Effective use of secure messaging platforms requires adequate training for healthcare professionals. Organizations must invest in training programs to ensure that all users are familiar with the platform's features and best practices for secure communication.
3. **Data security:** While secure messaging platforms are designed to protect patient data, ongoing vigilance is necessary to address emerging security threats and ensure that the platform remains secure against potential breaches.
4. **User resistance:** Some healthcare professionals may be resistant to adopting new communication tools. Overcoming this resistance requires demonstrating the benefits of the platform and providing support to ease the transition.

Integration with Electronic Health Records (EHRs): Enhancing communication and efficiency in healthcare

The integration of secure messaging platforms with Electronic Health Records (EHRs) represents a significant advancement in healthcare technology. This integration enhances the way healthcare professionals, including nurses, communicate, manage patient information, and deliver care. Here's an in-depth look at how this integration benefits healthcare practice and the challenges associated with it.

Features of EHR Integration

1. **Seamless access to patient information:** Integration with EHRs allows secure messaging platforms to provide healthcare professionals with direct access to patient records. This seamless access means that during communications, healthcare providers can view and reference patient histories, lab results, medication lists, and other critical information without switching between different systems. For example, a nurse can access a patient's recent lab results directly from a messaging app when discussing care plans with a physician.

2. **Real-time updates and notifications:** When EHRs are integrated with secure messaging platforms, any updates made to a patient's record can be instantly communicated to relevant healthcare providers. This real-time updating ensures that all team members are working with the most current information, which is crucial for making timely and informed decisions. Notifications about new lab results, changes in medication orders, or updates on patient status can be sent directly through the messaging platform.
3. **Enhanced documentation and audit trails:** Integration provides a comprehensive audit trail of communications and changes made to patient records. Every message, update, and modification is documented, creating a clear record of interactions and decision-making processes. This documentation supports legal compliance and provides transparency in patient care, helping to address potential disputes or questions about care provided.
4. **Streamlined workflows:** By integrating secure messaging platforms with EHRs, workflows are streamlined as healthcare professionals can perform multiple tasks within a single platform. For instance, tasks such as ordering tests, reviewing results, and discussing care plans can all be done without leaving the messaging application. This integration reduces the need to manually transfer information between systems, which can be time-consuming and error-prone.

Benefits of EHR integration with secure messaging platforms

- **Improved coordination of care:** The integration ensures that all members of the healthcare team have access to the same, up-to-date patient information. This improves care coordination by enabling more effective communication and collaboration among providers. For example, if a specialist needs to review a patient's current medication list, they can do so directly through the secure messaging platform, ensuring that any recommendations or changes are based on accurate and complete information.
- **Increased efficiency and productivity:** Healthcare professionals can save time by avoiding the need to switch between multiple systems or manually enter data. The ability to access patient information and communicate securely within a single platform enhances

overall efficiency and productivity. This means more time can be spent on direct patient care rather than on administrative tasks.

- **Enhanced patient safety:** Integration reduces the risk of errors associated with manual data entry and ensures that all communications and updates are based on the most current patient information. This is particularly important for preventing medication errors, avoiding duplicate tests, and ensuring that all providers are aware of recent changes in patient status or treatment plans.
- **Better patient engagement:** Patients benefit from more coordinated and responsive care. For instance, if a nurse can quickly communicate with a physician about a patient's condition and update the EHR with new information, the patient receives more timely and accurate care. This improved coordination helps in managing chronic conditions and addressing acute issues more effectively.

Challenges and considerations

- **Technical integration:** Integrating secure messaging platforms with EHR systems can be technically complex. Challenges include ensuring compatibility between different software systems, managing data synchronization, and addressing any technical issues that arise during the integration process. Effective integration requires collaboration between IT departments, EHR vendors, and messaging platform providers.
- **User training:** Healthcare professionals must be trained to effectively use integrated systems. Training should cover how to navigate both the EHR and secure messaging platform, understand how updates in one system are reflected in the other, and utilize the combined functionalities to improve patient care. Ongoing support and education are essential to ensure that users can fully leverage the benefits of integration.
- **Data privacy and security:** While integration enhances functionality, it also raises concerns about data privacy and security. Ensuring that both the secure messaging platform and EHR comply with regulations such as HIPAA is crucial. Robust encryption, secure access controls, and regular security audits are necessary to protect patient information from breaches and unauthorized access.
- **Workflow adaptation:** Healthcare teams may need to adapt their workflows to accommodate the integrated systems. This may involve revising processes for communication, documentation, and data management. Ensuring that these workflows are optimized for efficiency and do not create additional burdens for healthcare professionals is important for the successful adoption of integrated systems.

Virtual consultations in mobile health technologies

Virtual consultations, enabled by mobile health (mHealth) technologies, are rapidly transforming the healthcare landscape. These consultations leverage digital platforms to facilitate remote interactions between healthcare providers and patients, offering a range of benefits from increased access to care to enhanced efficiency in healthcare delivery. This detailed exploration covers the features, benefits, and impact of virtual consultations on modern healthcare practice.

Features of virtual consultation platforms

1. **Video and audio communication:** Virtual consultation platforms such as Zoom for Healthcare, Doxy.me, and Teladoc provide secure video and audio communication capabilities. These features allow healthcare professionals to conduct real-time consultations with patients, making it possible to diagnose, treat, and manage care remotely. High-quality video and clear audio ensure effective communication, mimicking in-person interactions as closely as possible.
2. **Appointment scheduling and management:** Many virtual consultation platforms offer integrated scheduling tools that allow patients to book, reschedule, or cancel appointments online. These tools often include automated reminders and confirmations, which help reduce no-shows and keep both patients and healthcare providers organized.
3. **Secure data transmission:** Security and privacy are paramount in virtual consultations. Platforms are designed with robust encryption protocols to ensure that all communications are confidential and comply with regulations such as HIPAA (Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act). Secure data transmission protects patient information from unauthorized access and breaches.
4. **Integration with Electronic Health Records (EHRs):** Integration with EHR systems enables seamless access to patient records during virtual consultations. Healthcare providers can review patient histories, lab results, and medication lists in real-time, facilitating more informed and accurate consultations. This integration also allows for the updating of patient records and documentation of consultation outcomes.
5. **Multimedia sharing:** Virtual consultation platforms often support the sharing of multimedia files, such as diagnostic images, test results, and documents. This feature enables healthcare providers to share relevant information with patients and other team members during the consultation, enhancing the comprehensiveness of care.

Benefits of virtual consultations

- **Increased accessibility:** Virtual consultations greatly enhance access to healthcare services, particularly for individuals in remote or underserved areas. Patients who may have difficulty traveling to healthcare facilities can receive care from the comfort of their homes. This increased accessibility is crucial for managing chronic conditions, providing follow-up care, and addressing urgent health concerns.
- **Convenience and flexibility:** Virtual consultations offer significant convenience for both patients and healthcare providers. Patients can schedule appointments at times that fit their schedules, and healthcare providers can conduct consultations without the need to be physically present in the office. This flexibility helps accommodate busy schedules and reduces the time and effort associated with travel.
- **Enhanced continuity of care:** The ability to conduct regular virtual consultations supports continuity of care. Patients can receive ongoing monitoring and follow-up care without interruptions, which is particularly important for managing chronic conditions and

maintaining treatment adherence. Virtual consultations also facilitate more frequent check-ins, allowing healthcare providers to adjust care plans as needed.

- **Cost savings:** Virtual consultations can lead to cost savings for both patients and healthcare systems. Patients save on transportation costs and time off work, while healthcare providers can reduce overhead expenses associated with physical office space and administrative tasks. Additionally, virtual consultations can decrease the burden on in-person healthcare facilities, potentially reducing wait times and improving overall efficiency.
- **Improved patient engagement:** Virtual consultations often lead to increased patient engagement and satisfaction. The convenience of remote care can enhance patient adherence to treatment plans and encourage proactive management of health conditions. Patients who are more engaged in their care are more likely to follow medical advice and participate in their health management.

Impact on healthcare practice

- **Enhanced care delivery:** Virtual consultations enable healthcare providers to deliver care more efficiently and effectively. The ability to conduct real-time assessments and provide immediate feedback improves the timeliness of care. Providers can also use virtual consultations to collaborate with specialists and other healthcare professionals, ensuring comprehensive and coordinated care.
- **Reduction in healthcare disparities:** By expanding access to remote care, virtual consultations help reduce healthcare disparities. Individuals who face barriers to accessing traditional in-person care, such as those living in rural areas or with mobility issues, benefit from the ability to receive care without geographic or physical limitations.
- **Support for telemedicine and remote monitoring:** Virtual consultations are an integral component of telemedicine and remote patient monitoring programs. They complement other mHealth technologies, such as wearable devices and remote monitoring systems, by providing a platform for real-time consultations based on data collected from these tools.

Challenges and considerations:

1. **Technical issues:** Technical problems, such as poor internet connectivity or software glitches, can hinder the effectiveness of virtual consultations. Ensuring reliable and high-quality

technology is essential for successful remote interactions. Healthcare organizations must invest in robust platforms and provide technical support to address potential issues.

2. **Privacy and security concerns:** Maintaining the privacy and security of patient information during virtual consultations is crucial. Healthcare providers must use platforms that comply with regulatory standards and implement strong security measures to protect sensitive data from breaches.
3. **Limitations of remote assessment:** While virtual consultations are effective for many types of care, some conditions require physical examinations or diagnostic tests that cannot be conducted remotely. Healthcare providers must carefully assess whether a virtual consultation is appropriate for the patient's specific needs.
4. **Adoption and training:** Both patients and healthcare providers need to be comfortable using virtual consultation platforms. Training and support are essential to ensure that all users can effectively navigate the technology and utilize its features.

Task management and collaboration tools in mobile health technologies

Task management and collaboration tools are essential components of mobile health (mHealth) technologies, streamlining workflows, enhancing teamwork, and improving overall efficiency in healthcare settings. These tools facilitate the coordination of tasks, communication among healthcare professionals, and management of patient care activities. This detailed exploration covers the features, benefits, and impact of task management and collaboration tools in the context of healthcare.

Features of task management and collaboration tools

1. **Task assignment and tracking:** Task management tools enable the assignment of specific tasks to healthcare team members, complete with deadlines and priority levels. Platforms like Asana, Trello, and Microsoft Teams offer features for creating, assigning, and tracking tasks, allowing team members to monitor progress and ensure that responsibilities are clearly defined and managed. For example, a nurse manager can assign follow-up tasks to team members based on patient care plans and track their completion status.
2. **Shared calendars and scheduling:** Integrated calendars and scheduling features help coordinate appointments, meetings, and shifts among healthcare professionals. Shared calendars ensure that all team members are aware of upcoming events, deadlines, and scheduling conflicts. Tools like Google Calendar and Microsoft Outlook allow healthcare teams to schedule and manage patient appointments, staff meetings, and other critical events collaboratively.
3. **Real-time communication:** Collaboration tools facilitate real-time communication through chat, video conferencing, and messaging features. Platforms such as Slack, Microsoft Teams, and Zoom provide instant messaging, video calls, and audio communication, allowing healthcare professionals to discuss patient care, share updates, and make decisions quickly. Real-time communication supports effective coordination and decision-making, especially in dynamic and fast-paced healthcare environments.

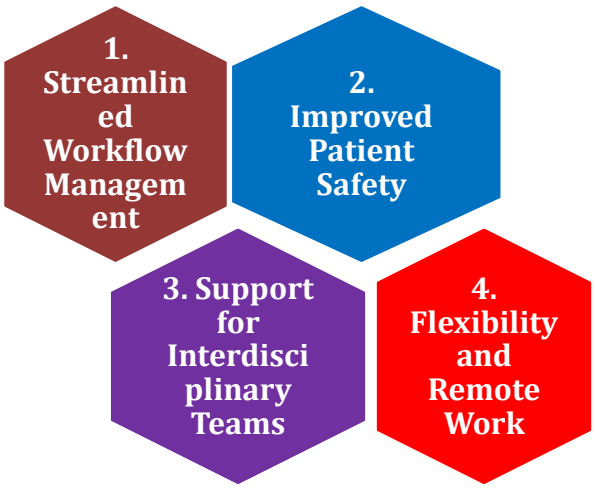
4. **Document sharing and collaboration:** These tools support the sharing and collaborative editing of documents, such as care plans, patient records, and reports. Platforms like Google Drive and Microsoft OneDrive allow multiple users to access, edit, and comment on documents simultaneously. This capability enhances collaboration by enabling team members to work together on documents in real-time, ensuring that everyone has access to the latest information.
5. **Workflow automation:** Task management tools often include features for automating repetitive tasks and processes. Workflow automation can streamline routine activities, such as appointment reminders, follow-up notifications, and task assignments. Automation reduces the administrative burden on healthcare professionals and helps ensure that important tasks are completed consistently and on time.
6. **Integration with EHRs and other systems:** Many task management and collaboration tools integrate with Electronic Health Records (EHRs) and other healthcare systems. This integration allows for seamless access to patient information, integration of task-related data, and coordination of care activities. For example, a task management tool integrated with an EHR system can automatically update patient care plans based on completed tasks and communicate changes to relevant team members.

Benefits of task management and collaboration tools

- **Enhanced team coordination:** Task management and collaboration tools improve coordination among healthcare professionals by providing a centralized platform for communication and task management. Clear task assignments, real-time updates, and shared information ensure that all team members are aligned and working towards common goals.
- **Improved efficiency and productivity:** By streamlining workflows, automating tasks, and facilitating real-time communication, these tools enhance overall efficiency and productivity. Healthcare professionals can manage their time more effectively, reduce administrative overhead, and focus more on direct patient care.
- **Better patient care:** Efficient task management and collaboration contribute to better patient care by ensuring that tasks are completed on time, care plans are followed, and all team members are informed of patient needs and updates. This coordination helps prevent errors, delays, and miscommunications that could impact patient outcomes.
- **Increased accountability and transparency:** Task management tools provide visibility into task assignments, progress, and completion status. This transparency helps hold team members accountable for their responsibilities and provides a clear record of task management activities. This accountability is crucial for maintaining high standards of care and ensuring that all tasks are completed as required.
- **Enhanced communication and collaboration:** Real-time communication features foster collaboration among healthcare professionals, enabling quick resolution of issues, sharing of information, and coordination of care. Effective communication

supports a collaborative approach to patient care, where input from multiple team members is integrated into the care plan.

Impact on healthcare practice



1. **Streamlined workflow management:** Task management and collaboration tools streamline healthcare workflows by automating routine tasks, organizing activities, and improving coordination. This streamlined approach helps reduce bottlenecks, improve time management, and ensure that care activities are carried out efficiently.
2. **Improved patient safety:** By providing clear task assignments and real-time updates, these tools help reduce the risk of errors and omissions in patient care. Improved coordination and communication among healthcare team members contribute to safer and more effective care delivery.
3. **Support for interdisciplinary teams:** Task management and collaboration tools facilitate collaboration among interdisciplinary teams, including doctors, nurses, therapists, and other healthcare professionals. These tools support the integration of diverse expertise and perspectives into patient care, leading to more comprehensive and effective treatment plans.
4. **Flexibility and remote work:** With the increasing adoption of remote and flexible work arrangements in healthcare, task management and collaboration tools provide the flexibility needed to support virtual teams and remote care providers. These tools enable healthcare professionals to collaborate and manage tasks effectively, regardless of their physical location.

Challenges and considerations

1. **Integration challenges:** Integrating task management and collaboration tools with existing healthcare systems, such as EHRs and other software, can be complex. Ensuring compatibility and seamless data flow between systems requires careful planning and technical support.
2. **User training and adoption:** Successful implementation of task management and collaboration tools requires adequate training for healthcare professionals. Ensuring that users are comfortable with the tools and understand how to leverage their features effectively is essential for maximizing their benefits.
3. **Data privacy and security:** Task management and collaboration tools must adhere to data privacy and security regulations to protect patient information. Ensuring that these tools have

robust security features and comply with regulations such as HIPAA is crucial for maintaining the confidentiality and integrity of patient data.

4. **Workflow disruptions:** The introduction of new tools can disrupt established workflows and require adjustments by healthcare professionals. Careful implementation and support are needed to minimize disruptions and ensure a smooth transition to new processes.

Impact of task management and collaboration tools on nursing practice

Task management and collaboration tools have a profound impact on nursing practice, transforming how nurses coordinate care, manage tasks, and communicate within healthcare teams. These tools are essential in enhancing the efficiency, effectiveness, and quality of nursing care. Here's a detailed exploration of how task management and collaboration tools influence nursing practice:

Enhanced coordination and communication

1. **Improved team collaboration:** Task management and collaboration tools, such as Microsoft Teams, Slack, and Asana, facilitate seamless communication among nursing staff and other healthcare professionals. Nurses can easily coordinate with physicians, specialists, and other team members, ensuring that patient care is well-coordinated and that everyone involved in a patient's care is informed about their condition and treatment plan.
2. **Real-time updates and information sharing:** These tools provide real-time communication channels for nurses to share updates about patient conditions, treatment changes, and critical information. Instant access to updates and shared documents ensures that all team members are aware of any changes in a patient's status or care plan, reducing the likelihood of miscommunication and improving the timeliness of care.
3. **Enhanced documentation:** Collaboration tools often include features for documenting and tracking communications, decisions, and task completion. This documentation provides a clear record of care activities and team interactions, which is valuable for ensuring accountability, reviewing care processes, and maintaining compliance with healthcare regulations.

Improved efficiency and workflow

1. **Streamlined task management:** Nurses can use task management tools to organize and prioritize their tasks, manage patient care activities, and track their progress. Features such as task assignments, deadlines, and progress tracking help nurses stay organized and ensure that essential tasks, such as administering medications or performing routine checks, are completed on time.
2. **Reduced administrative burden:** By automating routine tasks, such as scheduling, reminders, and follow-up notifications, these tools help reduce the administrative burden on nurses. This automation allows nurses to focus more on patient care and less on administrative tasks, leading to improved job satisfaction and more effective care delivery.
3. **Enhanced scheduling and shift management:** Integrated scheduling features in task management tools help nurses manage their shifts, coordinate with colleagues, and ensure adequate staffing levels. Shared calendars and scheduling tools facilitate better planning

and coordination, reducing scheduling conflicts and ensuring that patient care is uninterrupted.

Better patient care

1. **Increased responsiveness:** Real-time communication and task management enable nurses to respond more quickly to patient needs and changes in their conditions. By having immediate access to patient information and updates, nurses can take timely actions, make informed decisions, and address issues promptly, leading to better patient outcomes.
2. **Enhanced care coordination:** Task management and collaboration tools improve care coordination by ensuring that all team members are aligned and informed about a patient's care plan. This alignment helps prevent duplicative efforts, ensures that all aspects of care are addressed, and promotes a more cohesive approach to patient management.
3. **Support for interdisciplinary teams:** These tools facilitate collaboration among interdisciplinary teams, allowing nurses to work effectively with other healthcare professionals. This collaborative approach ensures that diverse expertise is integrated into patient care, leading to more comprehensive and effective treatment plans.

Impact on nursing education and training

- **Enhanced training opportunities:** Task management and collaboration tools provide valuable training opportunities for nursing staff. Nurses can use these tools to participate in online training sessions, collaborate on educational projects, and access resources and support from colleagues. This access to training and information supports continuous professional development and skill enhancement.
- **Improved onboarding:** For new nurses, task management and collaboration tools streamline the onboarding process by providing access to important documents, training materials, and team communication channels. This support helps new staff integrate more quickly into their roles and become effective team members.

Challenges and considerations

1. **Technical training and support:** Nurses need adequate training and support to effectively use task management and collaboration tools. Ensuring that nursing staff are comfortable with these tools and understand their features is essential for maximizing their benefits. Ongoing technical support is also necessary to address any issues or questions that arise.
2. **Data security and privacy:** Maintaining the privacy and security of patient information is a critical consideration when using task management and collaboration tools. Ensuring that these tools comply with regulations such as HIPAA and have robust security features is essential for protecting patient data and maintaining confidentiality.
3. **Integration with existing systems:** Integrating task management and collaboration tools with existing healthcare systems, such as Electronic Health Records (EHRs), can be complex. Ensuring seamless integration and data flow between systems is crucial for effective use and to avoid disruptions in workflow.

4. **User resistance:** Some nursing staff may be resistant to adopting new technologies. Addressing this resistance requires demonstrating the benefits of the tools, providing adequate training, and offering support to ease the transition and encourage acceptance.

Conclusion:

Mobile Health (mHealth) technologies are significantly transforming the healthcare landscape, offering numerous benefits that enhance the delivery of care and patient engagement. By enabling access to virtual consultations, health tracking apps, and remote monitoring tools, mHealth addresses critical challenges such as improving accessibility for underserved populations and managing chronic conditions more effectively. These technologies facilitate real-time communication, streamline clinical workflows, and support data-driven decision-making, leading to more personalized and efficient healthcare.

The integration of mHealth tools with Electronic Health Records (EHRs) and other healthcare systems further enhances their utility by providing seamless access to patient information and improving care coordination. Despite the clear advantages, challenges such as ensuring data security, managing integration with existing systems, and providing adequate user training must be addressed to fully realize the potential of mHealth technologies.

References:

1. Baniasadi, T., Niakan Kalhori, S. R., Ayyoubzadeh, S. M., Zakerabasali, S., & Pourmohamadkhan, M. (2018). Study of challenges to utilise mobile-based health care monitoring systems: A descriptive literature review. *Journal of Telemedicine and Telecare, 24*(10), 661–668. https://doi.org/10.1177/1357633X18786666
2. Byambasuren, O., Beller, E., & Glasziou, P. (2019). Current knowledge and adoption of mobile health apps among Australian general practitioners: Survey study. *JMIR mHealth and uHealth, 7*(6), e13199. https://doi.org/10.2196/13199
3. Gagnon, M. P., Ngangue, P., Payne-Gagnon, J., & Desmartis, M. (2016). m-Health adoption by healthcare professionals: A systematic review. *Journal of the American Medical Informatics Association, 23*(1), 212–220. https://doi.org/10.1093/jamia/ocv052
4. Garavand, A., Samadbeik, M., Kafashi, M., & Abhari, S. (2017). Acceptance of health information technologies, acceptance of mobile health: A review article. *Journal of Biomedical Physics & Engineering, 7*(4), 403–408.
5. Godoe, P., & Johansen, T. (2012). Understanding adoption of new technologies: Technology readiness and technology acceptance as an integrated concept. *Journal of European Psychology Students, 3*(1), 38–52. https://doi.org/10.5334/jeps.aq
6. Gleason, A. W. (2015). mHealth: Opportunities for transforming global health care and barriers to adoption. *Journal of Electronic Resources in Medical Libraries, 12*(2), 114–125. https://doi.org/10.1080/15424065.2015.1031676
7. Hamilton, E. C., Saiyed, F., Miller, C. C. 3rd, Eguia, A., Fonseca, A. C., Baum, G. P., ... & Aloia, T. A. (2018). The digital divide in adoption and use of mobile health technology among caregivers of pediatric surgery patients. *Journal of Pediatric Surgery, 53*(8), 1478–1493. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jpedsurg.2017.11.059

8. Kaphle, S., Chaturvedi, S., Chaudhuri, I., Krishnan, R., & Lesh, N. (2015). Adoption and usage of mHealth technology on quality and experience of care provided by frontline workers: Observations from rural India. *JMIR mHealth and uHealth, 3*(2), e61. https://doi.org/10.2196/mhealth.4047
9. Lluch, M. (2011). Healthcare professionals' organisational barriers to health information technologies: A literature review. *International Journal of Medical Informatics, 80*(12), 849–862. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ijmedinf.2011.09.005
10. Laxman, K., Krishnan, S. B., & Dhillon, J. S. (2015). Barriers to adoption of consumer health informatics applications for health self-management. *Health Science Journal, 9*(5), 7.
11. Nilsen, E. R., Dugstad, J., Eide, H., Gullslett, M. K., & Eide, T. (2016). Exploring resistance to implementation of welfare technology in municipal healthcare services: A longitudinal case study. *BMC Health Services Research, 16*(1), 657. https://doi.org/10.1186/s12913-016-1913-5
12. O'Connor, S., Hanlon, P., O'Donnell, C. A., Garcia, S., Glanville, J., & Mair, F. S. (2016). Barriers and facilitators to patient and public engagement and recruitment to digital health interventions: Protocol of a systematic review of qualitative studies. *BMJ Open, 6*(9), e010895. https://doi.org/10.1136/bmjopen-2015-010895
13. O'Connor, Y., & O'Donoghue, J. (2015). Contextual barriers to mobile health technology in African countries: A perspective piece. *Journal of Mobile Technology in Medicine, 4*(1), 31–34. https://doi.org/10.7309/jmtm.4.1.7
14. Scott Kruse, C., Karem, P., Shifflett, K., Vegi, L., Ravi, K., & Brooks, M. (2018). Evaluating barriers to adopting telemedicine worldwide: A systematic review. *Journal of Telemedicine and Telecare, 24*(1), 4–12. https://doi.org/10.1177/1357633X16674087
15. Ventola, C. L. (2014). Mobile devices and apps for health care professionals: Uses and benefits. *Pharmacy and Therapeutics, 39*(5), 356–364.
16. Winters, N., Langer, L., & Geniets, A. (2018). Scoping review assessing the evidence used to support the adoption of mobile health (mHealth) technologies for the education and training of community health workers (CHWs) in low-income and middle-income countries. *BMJ Open, 8*(7), e019827. https://doi.org/10.1136/bmjopen-2017-019827
17. Zahmatkeshan, M., Zakerabasali, S., Farjam, M., Gholampour, Y., Seraji, M., & Yazdani, A. (2021). The use of mobile health interventions for gestational diabetes mellitus: A descriptive literature review. *Journal of Medicine and Life, 14*(2), 131–141. https://doi.org/10.25122/jml-2020-0130
18. TechTarget.https://www.techtarget.com
19. ScienceDirect. https://www.sciencedirect.com
20. ResearchGate https://www.researchgate.net
21. OSP Labs. What is mHealth? https://www.osplabs.com/insights/what-is-mhealth/

RECENT DEVELOPMENTS IN THE USE OF MASS COMMUNICATION FOR HEALTH EDUCATION

Ajay Kumar Dogra
UIAMS, Panjab University, Chandigarh
Corresponding author E-mail: drajaydogra23@gmail.com

Abstract:

Mass media has become a crucial tool for disseminating health education to the general public, revolutionizing the way we educate and empower individuals. Utilizing various mediums such as radio, television, motion pictures, and the press, mass media has transformed the way we educate and empower individuals. These changes have led to transformative developments and societal perceptions, showcasing the adaptability of mass media in catering to evolving needs. Mass communication is often used in health education to deliver ideas and information on health-related issues, as well as to influence attitudes or behaviors. Mass communication channels can also be used by health educators to express viewpoints on health issues relevant to the public, as health knowledge and beliefs affect consciously controlled behavior and unconscious or habitual behavior. Further research is needed to understand the potential of mass media in health education and societal change. The use of AI in health promotion and the prevention of communicable and chronic diseases has mainly focused on tailoring health messages and interventions to users in a different way compared to what has been done with the use of ICT. In fact, the use of AI allows for the full personalization of the message with the significant potential to enable the user to reach a specific health information pre-established target.

Keywords: Education, Mass Communication, Health, Health Education, Technology

Introduction:

The use of mass media for the communication of health education to the general public is a relatively recent phenomenon that has emerged in the last few decades, bringing about a significant paradigm shift in our approach to disseminating vital health information. It is through an array of mediums such as radio, television, motion pictures, the press, and various other innovative means that the possibility to reach a wide audience with groundbreaking health knowledge has truly become a reality, revolutionizing the way we educate and empower individuals. Throughout recent years, remarkable and profound changes have transpired in our utilization of mass media for public communication, paving the way for a new era of transformative developments and influencing societal perceptions like never before. These dynamic alterations predominantly involve strategic alterations in emphasis rather than a complete transformation in methodology, showcasing the remarkable adaptability of mass media in catering to the evolving needs of society. By delving into the intricacies of these game-changing advancements and critically examining their content, one can attain a deeper

understanding of the immense power that mass media possesses as an indispensable tool for disseminating health education and inspiring positive societal change.

First, we will briefly review the general literature of a theoretical nature; next, we will examine what is known about audience response to various media; third, we will discuss the use of mass media in various health education programs designed for lay populations; fourth, we will consider the use of media for professional education; and fifth, we will suggest areas in which more research is needed. We are interested at this point in moving from the theoretical and hypothetical to the practical and the empirical. In this chapter, we will concentrate on the use of mass media for communicating health information to the general public and will deal in part with the place of mass communication in the teaching program for health professions.

Mass communication often is used in health education to deliver ideas and information to the public on a broad array of health-related issues. It can also be used as a persuasive technique to change attitudes or to influence related behaviors. The purpose, for example, of the public service announcements related to the dangers of smoking produced by voluntary health organizations is to create "awareness." However, the Robert Wood Johnson Foundation's 7-year $500-million National Public Education Program (the Nurse is the ad campaign's sponsor), the largest such effort ever, is designed to "discourage smoking and to elicit public support in favor of those who are focused on tobacco control and prevention."

Materials placed in mass communication channels are only a part of a larger investigation. For example, television formats can be used to document and report best practices in the field of injury or illness prevention to the larger public. A news commentary can describe the operation of chronic disease prevention efforts in an actual community and invite other communities to take similar action. In addition, mass communication channels can be used by health educators to express viewpoints on health issues relevant to the larger public. Because health knowledge and beliefs affect consciously controlled behavior, as well as unconscious or habitual behavior, such expression is a potentially valuable strategy to health educators.

The role of mass communication in health education

The term "mass communication" refers to the distribution of messages to the public via the mass media. The purpose of this paper is to describe the specific ways in which mass communication is being used for health education. Public relations encompass all aspects of health communication, including the public image, use of media and the publics for health education, and effective communication patterns with "consumers" of the services. Mass communication (or broadcast communication as it will be referred to) is claimed to have three major functions in public health education:

1. To inform and acquaint the public with the health status of the nation: the problems, the proposed solutions, and the achievements; also the provisions of health services available in the community and sources of assistance to the individual.
2. To educate the public with regard to how to obtain health service: to inform the public as to the proper procedures to follow in obtaining and properly utilizing health services.

3. To promote healthy attitudes and practices: to motivate people to want to and to be able to obtain and utilize health services. It is this third function that illustrates the increasing interest of health professionals in the potential of broadcasting as a method for modifying specific health attitudes and motivate individuals to adopt or change healthy practices.

The mere dissemination of information is no longer presumed to be sufficient reason to invest large amounts of money in radio or television time. In fact, a comprehensive review of attempted behavior change utilizing the media reveals generally meager results, with some notable exceptions. Clearly, the primary use of the mass media in public health education has been to disseminate crucial information about, and motivation for, different practices that promote overall well-being and disease control. This is not surprising as historically, the main goal of public health in general was to control the spread of diseases, thus the target audience mainly consisted of the general public, users of healthcare services, and influential members of the community. However, with the evolving landscape of public health, especially since the early sixties, there has been a noticeable shift towards addressing the environmental-contingent or more behavioral pathogenic health problems, as pointed out by Richard Montagu. As a result, the overarching goal has expanded towards the realization of an acceptable environment and active involvement in an advocacy role. Moreover, the groups targeted in public health initiatives have broadened significantly, extending beyond the traditional scope of public health education.

The Crucial Role of Mass Communication As the term suggests, one of the major uses of mass communication in health is to inform and educate the public. This stands true whether public broadcasters or commercial interests operate mass channels. In an expanding state, the public information function of mass communication becomes increasingly important. Mass channels, that is, can reach people all over the country; establishments can be closed and funds raised. Television and film, not to mention radio, entertain. People listen with delight to habit-forming serials, comedians, etc. The array of newspapers and periodicals also proves that news and current happenings are important to a sizeable section of the public. The fact that the audience for news bulletins often exceeds the average for the period of the programme indicates that there are some people who will wish to be informed about events even while wanting a television or radio which provides them with as much light relief as possible. The mass of people in most countries have an interest in being informed about health. A considerable section of the population in many countries would wish to go further than simple awareness, providing action once they are informed. This is particularly the case where services are freely available. Many people in the world are seriously ill or dying from diseases whose causes they can avoid if they have the necessary information, knowledge, understanding, and the will. In whatever ways they are made use of, mass communication channels cater for all the requirements. There are, therefore, several points at which mass communication can be used to effect public awareness:

1. To increase public awareness that health is an essential and worthwhile asset which is relevant to all;

2. To provide knowledge about the right action in relation to health. In relation to any form of health care or disease control, some information must be disseminated by purposeful means. Information, for example, about: the availability of health services; the symptoms and early signs of diseases and the right and wrong steps to take; the sequence of events at a field station clinic, public health centre, or special clinic. The kind of reliable person to contact when health measures can best be used, e.g. health workers or vaccination campaign teams on tour on should attend at the out-post clinic.
3. To influence attitudes and the public opinion of both a general and informed type; this is directly relevant to the success of any mass public health appeal camps; there must be public opinion in favour of a smallpox vaccine campaign if it is to be successful; the public must not merely understand the usefulness of completing the course of chloroquine for malaria; they must be in agreement with the principle before to concern to take action. Conversely, too, it is possible to use the mass media to bring about unfavourable attitudes towards certain aspects of health. It is also important from the point of view of a disease control campaign for accurate, relevant, and complete information to be the first message heard by the public. In the case of vaccination, the fact that it gives protection and helps stop the spread of disease is a most significant aspect of the story the public needs to know; information on side reactions should only be divulged to the informed public who must certainly be told about them before they consent to vaccination. In the field of mass communication, the media of mass communication are television, radio, film, theatre, press, cinema fleets, and audio equipment, and community facilities. Information is supplied to the media in the form of press releases, bulletins, TV scripts. Compilations of cuttings from the press are often sent out with a commentary on reports of interest for the writers to follow up.

Emerging technologies in mass communication for health education

The provision of useful health information is one of the benefits of the mass media. There are now many new and old technologies available to program planners, such as movies and library displays. Whether the technology used is a billboard or television commercial, the approach to using it should be similar. Unfortunately, reports indicate that in those cases, 8 times out of 10, health education is not planned at all, and when it is, there is often no evaluation of impact. To foster better utilization of available mass communication techniques in health education, this paper presents highlights of recent and ongoing projects in health education using the mass media. These projects are diverse in target audience and the media utilized. It is hoped that they will inspire others to use current approaches to using available channels of communication in health education.

The high cost of using the mass media has inspired program planners to utilize more creative and low-cost program delivery media. There are already numerous examples of health education being outlined via social mailings; and hospitals have sent discharge papers which include instructions for caring for the patient at home to grandmothers or others who are

responsible for that patient. In Brookline, Massachusetts, the schools have used the telephone to reduce the number of students who are absent when the air pollution index rises by having secretaries telephone the homes of all students on selected days. When the weather is foggy or rainy, fewer children play hooky. In the last decade, social media platforms such as Facebook, Instagram, Snapchat, and Twitter have experienced a noticeable increase in the number of users. With over 3 billion users, Facebook has become the largest social media platform in the world, followed by YouTube and WhatsApp with over 2 billion users. At present, there are over 1.2 billion and 600 million active daily mobile users of Facebook and Instagram, respectively. An increasing number of public health professionals have been using social media platforms to disseminate health information to the public, engage users in health-related discussions, or follow the trending topics among these platforms to better direct population health priority setting. The use of Web 2.0 applications, including Facebook, YouTube, Twitter, and LinkedIn, has turned the role of the consumer of health information into that of creator as well. Through tagging, sharing, forwarding, and other methods, social media provide platforms where individual users can act as publishers, widening the access to information. They drive the health information market in completely new ways, with little control or insight by traditional producers and gatekeepers.

Social media presents a unique opportunity for the public health field to embrace advanced communication techniques to promote health and prevent diseases. A 2016 survey conducted by the Pew Research Center detects an increase in the number of adult users ranging from 1% (YouTube) to 9% (Instagram) since 2015. For adults aged 18-24 years, six out of ten have an account on Snapchat. More strikingly, more than 2 billion people worldwide are expected to access Facebook at least once per month in 2021. The way information is disseminated in social media platforms is different from traditional mass media. Individuals are not just recipients of information but also producers, publishers, and critics of health information. The power of sharing these media to generate more interest in health issues can no longer be underestimated. Medical professionals are using social media to engage in open dialogue with the public and with patients so that they can receive greater insights into the health issues and concerns that are relevant to the groups they serve. Referring back to the "Web 2.0" philosophy of the read-write web, these developments reinforce the notion that effective multidimensional health communication is no longer about one-way flow of messages to audiences. Rather, it requires messages to be involved in a multi-directional and ongoing conversation (or "listening exercise") in which health professionals are responsive to audience feedback. As such, social media connectivity allows health topics to capture immediate attention and allows the public to engage with healthcare issues in ways never previously imagined in the mass communication field.

Theoretical frameworks in mass communication and health education

Health education is a function of mass communication in varying programs such as the Great Body Shop, production of documentaries, and classroom teaching. Depending on the

source of material broadcast, it is a fact that mass communication channels are efficient tools for mass education and enlightenment, e.g., tele-medicine, and the use of multimedia in preschool health education in Nigeria. Also, drama has been found to be a very potent medium, excellent in bringing educational messages to various segments of the population. Newspapers were found to be the leading source of news and information, with a large percentage of others specifically referring to television and radio. The leading source of news and information remains the press, especially national newspapers. The most commonly watched television program was found to be the 9:00 pm commercials; the programs cover news, movies, drama, and information. It was noted that specific medically related television programs were rare on the air. Also, contributions of mass media, especially television, to general or broad objectives of health education, motivation to nurses and viewers, and audience feedback are strong.

Social learning theory

Albert Bandura's (1965) social learning theory has provided mass communication practitioners and researchers with a conceptual tool for understanding the complexity of the influence that predictive perceptual, affective, and evaluational concomitants have on various mass media-produced learning experiences. Social learning theory postulates that learning processes can be perceptually represented and that they can be symbolized vicariously. Vicarious representation and symbolic modeling are possible through the individual's perception and subsequent memory of images of events, situations, or behavioral patterns executed by models, whether in the image projected by literary characters or in real-life verbal and visual communications applicable to other persons.

Social learning theory suggests that perceptual understanding, cognitive imagery, capacity to act, and expectations governing similar involvement can be positively or negatively influenced by mass media presentations of personal experiences related to future conduct. The characteristic procedures and expressions transmitted in media presentations can serve as an emulation-defining point for future personal decision-making efforts. Bandura (1963, 1979) argues that learning in circumstances that have ecological meaning for the individual can have the most important repercussions. Media do not just present selected image characters or real-life situations; they facilitate information transfer and permit audiences to internalize and use vicariously acquired facts. Any media a person perceives and subsequently remembers has the capability of symbolically instructing.

Health belief model

Health Belief Model seems to be an appropriate model in understanding mass communication intervention in the area of health education. The model proposes that health-seeking behavior is determined by a number of perceptions of an individual. These are perception of losses or decreases in health, actual personal stake by the individual in avoiding such a loss or a decrease in health, perception of seriousness of the illness, perception of susceptibility to the illness, and awareness of health-seeking action available to the individual.

A number of other models such as the Knowledge-Attitude-Practice model by Parson, Cognitive theory by Maibach, Social Learning theory by Bandura, and Elaboration Likelihood Model by Pettigrew & Thigarajah, the Collars model by Gengendoorn, etc. have been used in various contexts of mass communication in the area of health education. However, these models did not explain the effectiveness of mass communication in making preventive and promotional practices in the erstwhile primitive tribal villages of Attapadi.

Diffusion of innovations theory

Diffusion of Innovations is another popular and widely accepted communication theory related to health communication. It explains the spread of ideas, especially why innovations can be accepted or rejected by the target community or society without a solid reason. It acknowledges the influence of mass and mediated communication and interpersonal communication as a tool for bringing change within population communities. It extends that information supplied to a larger and interested population can be better processed and understood, which can ultimately lead to a change in behavior. The process here is based on adopting or rejecting and passing the idea from few through numerous others to several others.

The model is simple in that it uses an adopted-diffuser-user relationship and is greatly dependent on the communication process involved. Here an innovator pushing a message to an individual achieves a new idea, which is then passed from the individual to another individual. Stress the same idea-driven to obtain a change in its structure. Thus, mutations after several repeated processes finally determine a change in its application. This theory highlights mass communication, mediated communication as the shadow of interpersonal communication facilitated by the adoption of new ideas in the diffusion evolution of an idea or adoption of a new idea or innovation. This model reveals how mass and mediated communication initiate the diffusion process in healthcare. It evaluates channels involved that exert varied relationships concerning the sequence of innovations.

Successful health education campaigns

Anti-smoking campaigns

Anti-smoking campaigns are also organized at grassroots levels. For example, now it is usual to have advertisements on TV, radio, in newspapers, and on billboards showing the grim pictures of the effects of smoking. One interesting aspect of these advertisements is that the theme and the pictures depicted have been worked out with the sponsorship of the Union Ministry of Health. Another important part of these anti-smoking campaigns is highlighting the ill-effects of smoking in movies and publishing articles on the subject.

Through warnings on cigarette packages, it was found that they are the number one source of information concerning the ill-effects of smoking. This is followed by doctors and dentists. Friends and family also gave information. Anti-smoking campaigns are effective as they help to mobilize public opinion and stimulate non-smokers to encourage smokers to stop smoking. This is an innovative use of role models in real lives to stimulate smoking cessation.

Such anti-smoking campaigns have now become common, and it is important to conduct a study to find out the long-term effects. This is especially so for the high-risk group.

HIV/AIDS awareness programs

The HIV/AIDS scenario in India should be seen and comprehended in the larger context of a predominantly underdeveloped nation marked by both affluence and poverty and many sociocultural, religious, ethnic, and demographic diversities. In about two decades, the disease has spread from a few high-risk and concentrated areas and groups to gradually pervade the entire nation. Commercial centers, highways, tourist centers, and recreational areas have now become focal points for spreading the disease. The National AIDS Research Program in the USA has already warned that India may be harboring the world's largest concentration of active cases by the turn of the century. These downcast scenarios have had a muted response from the people at large. It is, however, interesting to note the growing consciousness and increasing maturity of the urban and metropolitan population who are increasingly accepting the HIV/AIDS challenge as theirs.

Challenges and Opportunities:

Mass communication presents distinct challenges and advantageous prospects for health education in comparison to other channels and methods. It is worth noting that some of these channels and methods are susceptible to exploitation by private enterprises, vested interests, and advertising professionals. Consequently, the utilization of advertising tricks and adverse psychology raises ethical concerns for public health workers. In fact, the American Social Hygiene Association has explicitly deemed it unethical for health workers to adopt the time, space, and marketing strategies employed in promoting commercial products for their own purposes. Navigating this murky territory can prove exceedingly difficult, particularly within a society where the proliferation of health quackery surpasses even the wildest fantasies of commerce-driven product developers. However, the standard set by this association serves as a beacon that all health education practitioners should strive to adhere to conscientiously. Nevertheless, health services themselves often possess highly potent means of mass communication at their disposal. These channels should be leveraged to their full potential whenever feasible. In particular, modern transportation systems offer a unique opportunity to make the resources of metropolitan or university hospitals accessible not only to rural practitioners but also directly to patients. The telephone, on numerous occasions, has proven to be a life-saving tool or instrumental in promptly notifying doctors. Additionally, the radio, especially during emergencies, presents limitless possibilities for disseminating vital health information. Public health agencies must seize every opportunity to reach the public through commercial networks, leveraging significant sponsorship and branding in the name of preventive medicine. As Casey astutely points out, the "free, abundant, and accumulating literature of mass communication" possesses the extraordinary ability to integrate the interests of both scientists and therapists. This integration has the potential to revolutionize health education, ultimately fostering a healthier and more informed society.

When considering the use of mass communication for health education, it is important to keep in mind several ethical considerations. First and foremost, those who develop health education messages should consider the possible reaction of the audience to the message, the impact of the message, and how the message can or should be presented to make it less frightening. It has been recommended that rather than engaging in an advertising campaign, health educators should strive to provide responsible health education. This includes several preventive measures that can be taken when developing messages, such as maintaining sincere and direct messages, avoiding language used only to entertain, and balancing the presentation of positive and negative information so as not to place too much emphasis on the negative and overly frighten the audience. In some instances, consistency and uniformity among the literature on the ethics of communication can be taken as an indication of the legitimacy of the arguments that have been advanced. We support the statement that message development in health education involves many dimensions and prospects.

Another aspect of ethical concern involves the matter of individual versus social rights. While using mass media as a means of reaching audiences raises issues of privacy and ethics, the overriding concern is further scrutiny of the messages our society sends and for whom they are targeted. When developing a controversial, in-depth, and informative radiation education series over the course of 2 years with women who were exposed to prenatal and postnatal diagnostic medical x-ray, the message development team was acutely aware of possible information overload and ethical concerns. Some of the difficulties and challenges of mass communication for health education involve consequences of problems associated with the use of projective labeling, generalization, and stigmatization. Research indicates that indeed cancer patients are treated in this fashion. We are now examining the problem of "What are the primary factors in labeling"? It may well be the condition regarding causality; it is disturbed whenever there is any threat to normal health patterns. It could be proposed that the people who become or are labeled mentally ill or physically handicapped (to cite two examples) are seen as a result of fear regarding their losses being projected on these two groups. In addition, some patients who come to the facility feel like "I must be really bad" so now they are ready to be labeled, which sets them up for further sickness. Mass communications might serve to further compound the problem by increasing stereotyping through classification. By classifying conditions as "cancer prone," one increases the stereotype of what a lung cancer patient is and increases the early rejection and ridicule theory. Furthermore, classification makes the information difficult to use in a community setting where classifications of carcinoma in situ are not used. Group theory states that no one person can be pigeonholed and now research is lending credence to this fact for the stress disease label. Group, therefore individual therapy and crisis intervention at the earliest possible time could be part of coping assistance in a community-wide education program.

Successful campaigns in health education

The examination of successful campaigns in Western societies and Third World countries has led to the formulation of a number of generalizations about how an adult population can be effectively influenced through mass communication channels.

These generalizations suggest a variety of approaches. Some successful campaigns have involved mass media messages alone with relatively little contact by personal sources. Others made use of mass communication of a more general nature in combination with more intensive efforts in the schools, by agencies and voluntary groups, on film buses, and by local community groups. There appears to be little agreement as to the extent to which mass media should employ visual drama, personal testimonials, or jingles to increase attention, retention, and the likelihood of persuading the public to act. Those campaigns involving the use of mix-media made use of simpler, much less polished personalized and entertaining presentations. Many campaigns, however, relied on straightforward factual presentations with health professional speakers. This was true of the Back to the Farm campaign, which made heavy use of radio, lectures by health professional speakers, and a wide variety of visual aids. A number of successful campaigns have stressed information on the ill-effects or potential hazards of the status quo practices. In contrast, campaigns in the United States to obtain medical care, to have teeth and plums cleaned, immunized, to practice birth control, and to obtain regular physical examinations strive to attract attention through interest in improved health and to stress direct solicitation to use a particular kind of service. But in many instances this message has been supplemented by messages that are clearly of benefit to the audience such as feed saving for the farmer. In sum, successful campaigns produced a sharp focus through the consistent appearance of all TB symbols, the keeping of a few points and the mass media combination of newspaper, often with direct mail, backed up by the use of bulletins, fact sheets, filmstrips, posters, exhibits and lectures to agribusiness leagues or their equivalent. Locally, events, radio and newspaper stories helped to increase interest and motivation as, in some situations, did presentation of scientific evidence in some depth.

Future directions and innovations:

The current era has seen the development of technologies unimaginable a few decades ago, and these technologies will certainly continue to develop in the near future. It is therefore worthwhile to consider some of the future innovations in mass communication that are likely to shape health communication/education in the next few decades. Innovations of note, many of which are already beginning to emerge, include:

- The capacity of computers to process data at an increasingly rapid rate is leading to the use of what is often referred to as artificial intelligence, and this term will form the basis of our consideration. Many different types of devices use artificial intelligence techniques, and these vary from robots in industry to automatic video recorders, aircraft flight simulators, and diagnostic programs in medicine. We are concerned with three particular applications of artificial intelligence: expert systems, games, and natural language.

- Video recorders that are programmed to automatically record the news offer a further development in video print technology. Educational films, television programs, and video material have long been used for health education, including public health, especially in developing countries, to bridge the literacy gap.
- There is a variety of new media, from small portable radio receivers to video cassette recorders, that are already on the market, and it is not difficult to envisage a person having a handheld computer with a keyboard as well as a telephone receiver. As this trend develops, it can be expected that more and more of the media will be integrated into what is often called the "mediascape," an electronic world where sound, picture, word, and number are seamlessly integrated and which will be all the more powerful for its apparent transparency. It may provide an accessible mass medium that does not discriminate against size, color, or ability to read. In such a scenario, provision might be made for individual handling of the device; one person might prefer to deal with a visual display unit, another with pure print of more or less sophistry (crude to sophisticated), and another with a combination of the two.

Clinical psychology has shown an interest in mass communication for over forty years. In recent years, with the increasing popularity of social media and the potential of using new technologies to reach users on a wide scale, interest in this topic among researchers and health providers has been revived. In particular, the use of AI is considered a new frontier in the field of mass communication for health (e-health). The importance of technology and AI in health communication is based on the idea that 'imperfect' AI has significant potential for tailoring messages to the user, as well as interacting and responding to the user's inquiries. Additionally, AI-based e-health interventions have been proven effective in addressing a wide range of conditions, from distress to hazardous drinking behaviors.

The use of AI in health promotion and the prevention of communicable and chronic diseases has mainly focused on tailoring health messages and interventions to users in a different way compared to what has been done with the use of ICT. In fact, the use of AI allows for the full personalization of the message with the significant potential to enable the user to reach a specific health information pre-established target. This approach has proved effective in improving the engagement level and, in turn, reducing the risks associated with acquiring the particular disease for which the intervention was targeted. One of the most important developments in the use of AI in health seems to be focused on communication. The use of chatbots, in either written or spoken form, could be of importance that transcends e-health interventions. Rather, it would seem reasonable to discuss their use as tools that can convey health promotion programs in a very innovative, alternative way. This could involve, for instance, engaging a chatbot in a mass period of stress, in advance of the upcoming sport season, designed to provide oral and written sports advice on increasing physical well-being and improving specific capabilities. Given that these programs are designed with experts for specific monitoring of the client's body with marks intermittently during the program executed in the practice sessions, it could help prevent sports injuries.

References:

1. Strezov, V., Evans, A., & Evans, T. J. (2017). Assessment of the economic, social and environmental dimensions of the indicators for sustainable development. *Journal of Sustainable Development, 25*(3), 242–253. https://doi.org/10.5539/jsd.v25n3p242
2. McQueen, D. V., & De Salazar, L. (2011). Health promotion, the Ottawa Charter and 'developing personal skills': A compact history of 25 years. *Health Promotion International, 26*(Suppl 2), 194–201. https://doi.org/10.1093/heapro/dar046
3. Eriksson, M., & Lindström, B. (2008). A salutogenic interpretation of the Ottawa Charter. *Health Promotion International, 23*(2), 190–199. https://doi.org/10.1093/heapro/dan014
4. Yoshida, I., Kobayashi, T., Sapkota, S., & Akkhavong, A. (2012). Evaluating educational media using traditional folk songs ('lam') in Laos: A health message combined with oral tradition. *Health Promotion International, 27*(1), 52–62. https://doi.org/10.1093/heapro/dar055
5. Cecilia, A., & Davia, M. A. (2011). Education is a key determinant of health in Europe: A comparative analysis of 11 countries. *Health Promotion International, 26*(2), 163–170. https://doi.org/10.1093/heapro/dar018
6. Shojaeifar, M., Niknami, S., Mirbalochzahi, A., Khammarnia, M., & Khorram, A. (2017). Comparison of the effect of educational methods on students' knowledge, attitude and behavior about hookah smoking. *Electronic Physician, 9*(2), 3870–3877. https://doi.org/10.19082/3870
7. Liu, S., Liangliang, C., & Zhao, X. (2019). The role of mass media in education policies: A Chinese case study. *Journal of Higher Education Policy and Management, 41*(2), 186–203. https://doi.org/10.1080/1360080X.2019.1584871
8. Rao, C. J. M., & Kumar, P. (2017). The role of mass media in education and paucity decline. *International Journal of Physical and Social Sciences, 7*(2), 9–23.
9. Mazumder, B. H. (2019). Role of mass media and the Indian democracy. *International Journal of Media, Culture and Politics, 15*(2), 258–270.
10. Saikia, R. (2017). Role of mass media in creating environmental awareness. *National Journal of Multidisciplinary Research and Development, 1*(2), 1–4.

WET CHEMISTRY UNVEILED: HISTORICAL ROOTS, CORE PRINCIPLES, AND CONTEMPORARY APPLICATIONS

Shivkant Patel*, Dillip Kumar Dash, Dipti Gohil and Kinjal Patel
Department of Pharmacy,
Sumandeep Vidyapeeth Deemed to be University,
At & Po. Piparia, Ta. Waghodia-391760, Vadodara, Gujarat, India
*Corresponding author E-mail: shivapatel2609@gmail.com

Abstract:

The present topic explores the foundational aspects of wet chemistry, tracing its evolution from ancient alchemical practices to its pivotal role in modern science and industry. This comprehensive overview delves into the historical development of wet chemistry, highlighting the contributions of early alchemists and pioneering chemists who shaped its principles. The core principles of wet chemistry, including reaction mechanics, solubility, and stoichiometry, are examined in detail, along with essential techniques such as titration, precipitation, extraction, and distillation. The abstract also emphasizes the significance of wet chemistry in various contemporary applications, including environmental science, pharmaceuticals, food and beverage analysis, forensic science, and academic research. By bridging historical techniques with modern practices, this work underscores the enduring importance of wet chemistry as a cornerstone of the chemical sciences.

Keywords: Wet Chemistry, Historical Development, Solubility, Analytical Techniques, Educational Applications

Introduction:

Wet chemistry, often referred to as bench chemistry, is a branch of chemistry that involves the use of liquids to analyse and manipulate substances. This traditional method relies on performing reactions in aqueous solutions, making it fundamental to both educational and professional laboratories [1]. The practice of wet chemistry spans centuries, tracing its origins back to the early experiments of ancient alchemists who used rudimentary forms of chemical analysis in their quest to transform base metals into gold and discover the elixir of life. These early endeavours, though steeped in mysticism, laid the groundwork for systematic chemical experimentation [2]. Wet chemistry remains essential for many types of chemical analysis and synthesis, providing a hands-on approach to understanding chemical reactions and properties. Techniques such as titration, precipitation, extraction, distillation, and crystallization are fundamental to wet chemistry. These methods are used to determine the concentration of solutions, isolate and purify compounds, and study reaction mechanisms and kinetics [3]. For instance, titration allows for accurate determination of unknown concentrations, while distillation is key for separating mixtures based on differences in boiling points. In modern laboratories, wet chemistry plays a critical role in various industries and research fields. Environmental scientists

use wet chemistry techniques to monitor and analyse pollutants in water, soil, and air, ensuring compliance with environmental regulations and protecting public health. In the pharmaceutical industry, wet chemistry is vital for developing new drugs, quality control, and ensuring the safety and efficacy of medications. The food and beverage industry relies on wet chemistry to verify the nutritional content, detect contaminants, and ensure product quality and safety. Forensic scientists utilize wet chemistry methods to analyse evidence from crime scenes, identifying substances such as drugs, toxins, and explosive residues. Educational institutions continue to teach wet chemistry as a foundational discipline, providing students with the practical skills and theoretical knowledge necessary for a career in chemistry. Hands-on experiments in wet chemistry help students understand core concepts such as reaction stoichiometry, solubility, and chemical equilibrium, fostering a deep appreciation for the principles that govern chemical reactions [4].

Despite the advent of advanced analytical instruments like mass spectrometers and chromatographs, wet chemistry remains indispensable. Its techniques are often more accessible, cost-effective, and suitable for routine analyses and initial studies where high-tech instrumentation may not be required. The tactile experience of mixing reagents, observing reactions, and measuring outcomes also provides an intuitive understanding of chemistry that purely digital or automated methods cannot replicate [5].

Historical significance

The origins of wet chemistry date back to the ancient alchemists, who were some of the earliest practitioners of chemical experimentation. These early scientists used basic forms of wet chemistry to try to transform base metals into gold and to find the elixir of life. Although their goals were rooted in mysticism and they lacked a scientific understanding of chemical processes, their work laid the foundation for the development of modern chemistry. Over the centuries', wet chemistry has evolved significantly, shedding its alchemical roots and adopting a more empirical and systematic approach. This transformation was especially evident during the 17th and 18th centuries, a period marked by the scientific revolution. Pioneers like Robert Boyle and Antoine Lavoisier played crucial roles in this evolution. Boyle, often regarded as the first modern chemist, emphasized the importance of experimentation and the scientific method in chemical research. His work in developing gas laws and debunking traditional alchemical concepts helped pave the way for a more rigorous and quantitative approach to chemistry. Similarly, Lavoisier, known as the father of modern chemistry, introduced the law of conservation of mass and identified and named essential chemical elements such as oxygen and hydrogen. His precise measurements and use of accurate glassware, such as flasks and beakers, revolutionized chemical experimentation. The invention and refinement of reliable glassware during this period were instrumental in advancing the field of wet chemistry. Glassware such as beakers, flasks, and pipettes enabled chemists to conduct experiments with greater precision and accuracy, allowing for more detailed observations and reproducible results. These advancements in laboratory equipment facilitated the accurate measurement and mixing of chemicals, which were crucial for

conducting controlled experiments and developing new chemical theories. The standardization of glassware also made it possible to perform complex chemical reactions and analyses, further advancing the field and contributing to the growth of modern chemistry [6].

Overall, the contributions of pioneers like Boyle and Lavoisier, combined with advancements in laboratory glassware, transformed wet chemistry from a mystical practice into a rigorous scientific discipline. Their work laid the groundwork for modern chemical research and education, making wet chemistry a fundamental component of both academic and industrial laboratories today [7].

Core principles and techniques

Wet chemistry is based on the use of liquid reagents to carry out chemical reactions. These reactions can occur in various types of solutions, but aqueous (water-based) solutions are the most common due to water's versatility as a solvent. Water's ability to dissolve a wide range of substances, its polarity, and its relatively neutral pH make it an ideal medium for many chemical reactions. The core principles of wet chemistry are essential for understanding and manipulating chemical processes [8]. These principles include:

1. Reaction mechanics

Understanding how different substances react with each other when mixed in a solution is fundamental to wet chemistry. Reaction mechanics involves studying the steps and stages of chemical reactions, known as reaction pathways or mechanisms. This includes identifying reactants, intermediates, and products, as well as understanding the energy changes that occur during a reaction. Knowledge of reaction mechanics helps chemists' control and optimize reactions, predict reaction outcomes, and design new chemical processes. For example, knowing whether a reaction is exothermic (releases heat) or endothermic (absorbs heat) can influence how the reaction is conducted and what conditions are necessary for its success [9].

2. Solubility

Solubility is the property of a substance to dissolve in a solvent to form a homogeneous solution. Understanding solubility is crucial for preparing solutions and carrying out reactions effectively. It involves knowing which compounds dissolve in which solvents and the extent of their solubility, typically expressed as solubility limits or solubility coefficients. Factors affecting solubility include temperature, pressure, and the nature of both the solute and the solvent. For instance, ionic compounds tend to dissolve well in polar solvents like water, while non-polar compounds are more soluble in non-polar solvents like hexane. Understanding solubility principles allows chemists to choose appropriate solvents for reactions, predict precipitation events, and develop methods for separating and purifying compounds [10].

3. Stoichiometry

Stoichiometry is the calculation of reactants and products in chemical reactions. It involves determining the correct proportions of reactants to predict the outcomes of reactions accurately. Stoichiometric calculations are based on the balanced chemical equations that represent the conservation of mass and the relationships between the quantities of reactants and

products. This principle is essential for designing experiments, scaling up reactions for industrial processes, and ensuring that reactions proceed with maximum efficiency and minimal waste. For example, in a titration experiment, stoichiometry helps determine the exact amount of titrant needed to react completely with the analyte, providing precise quantitative information about the concentration of the unknown solution [11].

Key techniques

Several techniques are fundamental to wet chemistry, each relying on these core principles to perform accurate and reproducible chemical analyses and syntheses:

- **Titration:** This method involves adding a solution of known concentration (the titrant) to a solution of unknown concentration until the reaction reaches its endpoint. Indicators or pH meters are often used to detect this point. Titration is crucial for determining concentrations of acids, bases, and other reactants in solution. By using stoichiometric principles, chemists can calculate the concentration of the unknown solution based on the volume of titrant used.
- **Precipitation:** This technique involves forming a solid (precipitate) from a solution during a chemical reaction. Precipitation is often used in qualitative analysis to identify the presence of specific ions or compounds in a sample. By understanding solubility rules, chemists can predict which compounds will form precipitates under certain conditions. Precipitates are usually collected by filtration for further analysis.
- **Extraction:** Used to separate compounds based on their solubility in different solvents. For example, liquid-liquid extraction involves shaking a solution with two immiscible solvents to transfer a solute from one solvent to the other. This technique relies on the differential solubility of compounds in the solvents used. Extraction is commonly used to isolate specific components from complex mixtures, such as separating organic compounds from aqueous solutions.
- **Distillation:** This process separates components of a mixture based on their different boiling points. It is widely used for purifying liquids, including the production of distilled water, spirits, and essential oils. By understanding the reaction mechanics and phase changes involved, chemists can design distillation processes to achieve efficient separation and purification of compounds.
- **Crystallization:** This involves forming solid crystals from a homogeneous solution. Crystallization is often used to purify solid substances. As the solution cools or evaporates, the solute forms pure crystals, leaving impurities behind in the solution. Understanding solubility and reaction mechanics is key to controlling the conditions under which crystallization occurs, ensuring high-purity products [12].

Modern applications

Wet chemistry remains crucial in modern science and industry. Its applications are vast and varied, encompassing fields such as:

1. Environmental science

In environmental science, wet chemistry techniques are indispensable for analysing pollutants in water, soil, and air to ensure environmental safety and compliance with regulations. By employing methods like titration, extraction, and precipitation, scientists can detect and quantify hazardous substances such as heavy metals, pesticides, and organic pollutants. These analyses help in monitoring pollution levels, assessing the effectiveness of remediation efforts, and guiding environmental policy decisions. For instance, water quality testing often involves wet chemistry methods to measure parameters like pH, hardness, dissolved oxygen, and the presence of nitrates and phosphates, which are critical for maintaining healthy ecosystems [13].

2. Pharmaceuticals

In the pharmaceutical industry, wet chemistry plays a vital role in the development and quality control of drugs. Techniques such as titration and crystallization are used to identify active ingredients, determine their purity, and quantify impurities. This ensures that drugs meet stringent safety and efficacy standards before they reach consumers. Additionally, wet chemistry methods are employed in stability testing to assess how drugs degrade over time and under various conditions, helping to establish shelf life and storage requirements. During drug synthesis, wet chemistry techniques enable precise control over reaction conditions, leading to high yields and consistent product quality [14].

3. Food and beverage

Ensuring product quality and safety in the food and beverage industry relies heavily on wet chemistry techniques. These methods are used to analyse the composition of foods and drinks, testing for contaminants like pesticides, heavy metals, and microbial pathogens. For example, titration can determine the acidity levels in beverages, while extraction and chromatography methods can isolate and identify food additives and preservatives. Nutritional analysis, which verifies the content of vitamins, minerals, fats, proteins, and carbohydrates, also relies on wet chemistry. This information is crucial for accurate labelling and compliance with regulatory standards, ensuring consumer safety and product integrity [15].

4. Forensic science

In forensic science, wet chemistry provides essential tools for identifying substances involved in criminal investigations. Techniques such as extraction, precipitation, and colorimetric analysis are used to detect and quantify drugs, toxins, and residues found at crime scenes or in biological samples. For instance, forensic toxicologists use wet chemistry methods to analyse blood and urine samples for the presence of illicit drugs or poisons. These analyses can provide critical evidence in legal cases, helping to establish the cause of death, link suspects to crime scenes, and uncover the presence of controlled substances. Wet chemistry's ability to provide accurate and reproducible results makes it a cornerstone of forensic investigations [15].

5. Academic research

Wet chemistry serves as a foundational method in teaching laboratories, helping students understand basic chemical principles and conduct experiments safely and accurately. In

educational settings, hands-on experience with wet chemistry techniques such as titration, precipitation, and crystallization allow students to learn about reaction mechanics, solubility, and stoichiometry in a practical context. These laboratory exercises not only reinforce theoretical knowledge but also develop essential skills in observation, measurement, and data analysis. Moreover, wet chemistry experiments can be tailored to explore a wide range of chemical phenomena, from simple acid-base reactions to complex organic syntheses, providing a comprehensive learning experience for budding chemists [16].

Safety and best practices

Due to the nature of chemicals involved, safety is a critical aspect of wet chemistry. Proper safety protocols are essential to protect individuals and ensure a safe working environment in both educational and professional laboratories. Best practices in wet chemistry include:

1. Personal Protective Equipment (PPE)

Personal Protective Equipment (PPE) is essential for protecting laboratory personnel from chemical splashes, spills, and exposure to hazardous substances. The key components of PPE include:

- **Gloves:** Chemical-resistant gloves protect hands from harmful substances and reduce the risk of skin absorption. Different types of gloves are used depending on the chemicals handled, such as nitrile, latex, or neoprene gloves.
- **Goggles:** Safety goggles or face shields protect the eyes from splashes, fumes, and debris. It is crucial to wear goggles at all times when handling chemicals, as the eyes are highly vulnerable to injury.
- **Lab coats:** Lab coats provide a protective barrier for the skin and clothing. They should be made of flame-resistant material and fit properly to cover as much skin as possible. Lab coats should be removed before leaving the laboratory to avoid spreading contaminants.
- **Additional PPE:** Depending on the specific chemicals and procedures, additional PPE such as respirators, aprons, and protective footwear may be required [17].

2. Proper ventilation

Ensuring good airflow in the laboratory is crucial to avoid inhalation of harmful fumes and vapors. Proper ventilation practices include:

- **Fume hoods:** Fume hoods are essential for containing and venting hazardous fumes, vapors, and dust. They should be used when handling volatile or toxic substances. Regular maintenance and inspection of fume hoods ensure they function effectively.
- **General ventilation:** Laboratories should have adequate general ventilation systems to provide a constant supply of fresh air and remove contaminated air. This helps maintain a safe atmosphere and reduces the risk of exposure to airborne hazards.

- **Local exhaust ventilation:** Local exhaust systems, such as canopy hoods or snorkel vents, can be used to capture and remove fumes at their source, providing additional protection when fume hoods are not practical [18].

3. Chemical storage

Proper storage of chemicals is essential to prevent accidents and ensure a safe laboratory environment. Key practices include:

- **Segregation of incompatible substances:** Chemicals should be stored according to their compatibility to prevent dangerous reactions. For example, acids and bases should be stored separately, and flammable substances should be kept away from oxidizers.
- **Labelling and organization:** All chemicals should be clearly labelled with their names, concentrations, hazard symbols, and expiration dates. Proper organization of storage areas, including dedicated cabinets for flammables, corrosives, and toxics, helps prevent accidental mixing and makes it easier to locate and manage chemicals.
- **Secure storage:** Chemicals should be stored in secure, lockable cabinets or rooms to prevent unauthorized access. Storage areas should be well-ventilated, cool, and dry to minimize the risk of chemical degradation or reaction [19].

4. Spill response

Having protocols and materials ready to manage chemical spills quickly and effectively is crucial for maintaining safety in the laboratory. Key elements of spill response include:

- **Spill kits:** Laboratories should be equipped with spill kits containing absorbent materials, neutralizers, and cleanup tools. Spill kits should be easily accessible and regularly checked for completeness.
- **Emergency procedures**: Clear, well-documented emergency procedures should be in place for different types of spills. These procedures should include steps for evacuating the area, containing the spill, and safely cleaning up the chemicals.
- **Training:** All laboratory personnel should be trained in spill response procedures, including the proper use of spill kits and PPE. Regular drills and refresher training ensure that everyone is prepared to handle spills effectively.
- **Waste disposal:** Proper disposal of chemical waste is an integral part of spill response. Waste should be collected in designated containers and disposed of according to local regulations and guidelines to prevent environmental contamination and health hazards [20].

Conclusion:

Wet chemistry is a cornerstone of the chemical sciences, combining age-old techniques with contemporary practices to address a diverse range of analytical and synthetic objectives. Historically, wet chemistry has its roots in ancient alchemy and has evolved over centuries, incorporating the pioneering work of early chemists who developed the foundational principles and methods still used today. The meticulous experimental techniques and systematic approaches established by figures like Robert Boyle and Antoine Lavoisier have shaped the field, allowing it

to flourish and adapt to modern scientific needs. In today's world, wet chemistry's core principles—such as reaction mechanics, solubility, and stoichiometry continue to be integral to understanding and manipulating chemical reactions. These principles are applied in various techniques, including titration, precipitation, extraction, distillation, and crystallization. Each of these methods plays a crucial role in the accurate and reproducible analysis and synthesis of chemical compounds. For example, titration is essential for determining the concentration of unknown solutions in industries ranging from pharmaceuticals to environmental monitoring, while extraction and distillation are key processes in the purification and separation of compounds.

References:

1. Zhong YL, Tian Z, Simon GP, Li D. Scalable production of graphene via wet chemistry: progress and challenges. Mater Today. 2015;18(2):73-8.
2. Nikam AV, Prasad BL, Kulkarni AA. Wet chemical synthesis of metal oxide nanoparticles: a review. Cryst Eng Comm. 2018;20(35):5091-107.
3. Zhang J, Wang H, Wang L, Ali S, Wang C, Wang L, et.al. Wet-chemistry strong metal–support interactions in titania-supported Au catalysts. J Am Chem Soc. 2019;141(7):2975-83.
4. Nandanwar CM, Kokode NS, Yerojwar RM, Yerpude AN, Meshram RS. Wet chemical synthesis and photoluminescence study of Eu3+ activated orthophosphate-based phosphor for n-UV-based solid-state lighting. J Opt. 2024;53(1):70-5.
5. Asghar R, Hassan S, Yaqoob Y. A comprehensive overview of wet chemistry methodologies and their application in the fabrication of materials for PEM fuel cell. Int J Hydrogen Energy. 2024;58:1190-203.
6. Wetherbee GA, Mast MA. Annual variations in wet-deposition chemistry related to changes in climate. Climate Dynamics. 2016;47(9):3141-55.
7. Ribun VS, Myronyuk IF, Roshko Y. An overview of modern ways of cleaning from rust and preservation of iron historical artefacts. Phys Chem Solid State. 2022;23(2):195-203.
8. Cui C, Liu W. Recent advances in wet adhesives: Adhesion mechanism, design principle and applications. Progress in Polymer Science. 2021;116:101388.
9. Yuan W, Liu X, Fu Y. Chemical thermodynamics and chemical kinetics analysis of sandstone dissolution under the action of dry–wet cycles in acid and alkaline environments. Bull Eng Geol Environ. 2019;78:793-801.
10. Jain T, Tang Q, Bjørnholm T, Nørgaard K. Wet chemical synthesis of soluble gold nanogaps. Acc Chem Res. 2014;47(1):2-11.
11. Jungcharoen P, Pédrot M, Choueikani F, Pasturel M, Hanna K, Heberling F, et.al. Probing the effects of redox conditions and dissolved Fe 2+ on nanomagnetite stoichiometry by wet chemistry, XRD, XAS and XMCD. Environ Sci: Nano 2021;8(7):2098-107.
12. Rivero PJ, Garcia JA, Quintana I, Rodriguez R. Design of nanostructured functional coatings by using wet-chemistry methods. Coat. 2018;8(2):76.

13. Shen JM, Xu L, Liu YG, Lu CL, Hou WH, Zhu JJ. Wet chemistry self-seeded surface-deposition process toward amorphous carbon nanotubes and their electrochemical application. Chem Mater. 2008;20(9):3034-41.
14. Puzic R. Application of wet chemistry techniques to process analysis and control. Analytica chimica acta. 1990;238:161-70.
15. Schettler G, Gottschalk M, Harlov DE. A new semi-micro wet chemical method for apatite analysis and its application to the crystal chemistry of fluorapatite-chlorapatite solid solutions. Am Mineral. 2011;96(1):138-52.
16. Zhao H, Li F, Wang S, Guo L. Wet chemical synthesis of amorphous nanomaterials with well-defined morphologies. Acc Mater Res. 2021;2(9):804-15.
17. Kelley EW. Sample plan for easy, inexpensive, safe, and relevant hands-on, at-home wet organic chemistry laboratory activities. J Chem Educ. 2021;98(5):1622-35.
18. Shendell DG, Barnett C, Boese S. Science-based recommendations to prevent or reduce potential exposure to biological, chemical, and physical agents in schools. J Sch Health 2004;74(10):390-6.
19. Ott J, Tan D, Loveless T, Grover WH, Brisk P. Chemstor: using formal methods to guarantee safe storage and disposal of chemicals. J Chem Inf Model. 2020;60(7):3416-22.
20. Gibson JH, Schröder I, Wayne NL. A research university's rapid response to a fatal chemistry accident: Safety changes and outcomes. J Chem Health Saf. 2014;21(4):18-26.

TRANSFORMING HEALTHCARE IN PHARMA AND DIAGNOSTICS THROUGH GENERATIVE AI

Navdeep Singh
Department of Computer Science & Engineering,
Punjabi University, Patiala.
Corresponding author E-mail: navdeepsony@gmail.com

Abstract:

Generative AI has huge potential to transform healthcare across the drug development, diagnosis and personalised treatments. Although methods do not deviate in form from conventional artificial intelligence, their creative aspect enables the prediction of fresh data and the generation of future statements on findings, all while preserving a single level of efficiency on pharmaceuticals. It really accelerates things in a big way, and that is what helps to make it cost-effective and lead you quickly to therapies for indications with extremely high unmet medical need. This is where deep learning models have been able to imitate difficult biological processes in order to capture these exciting insights and speed up drug compounds from being promising candidates, but not drugs yet. Thus, artificial intelligence models enhance the picture quality of medical imaging by offering a more precise representation to illustrate diseases at first phases that may have eluded our detection. Nevertheless, the use of AI in healthcare is currently met with challenges such as bias and fairness problems or ethical and legal issues. Addressing these challenges drives the requirement for broad data sets, interpretable AI models and compliance with established ethical and legal benchmarks. This will all happen while new technologies, such as quantum computing and synthetic biology combine the efforts of artificial intelligence in healthcare. Subject to the resolution of ethical matters, these developments could upend healthcare in terms of quality and impact patient outcomes for a generation with plenty more change.

Keywords: Generative AI, Drug Discovery, Diagnostics, Personalised Medicine, Machine Learning, Healthcare Innovation, Ethics, Regulatory Compliance.

Introduction:

Generative AI continues to push the boundaries in healthcare — changing industries such as pharmaceutical research and development (R&D), diagnostics and personalised medicine. After all, generative artificial intelligence differs from classic models in that it creates new data and can make predictions about the future. This feature is especially advantageous in the field of healthcare, as it enables the prediction of the behaviour of a new medication in people prior to its synthesis, or the generation of treatment strategies based on millions of comparable instances. By combining large datasets with powerful deep learning algorithms, generative AI has shown to efficiently solve long-standing challenges in healthcare like high costs associated with pharmaceutical R&D and the difficulty of identifying rare diseases. With the ability to achieve

what others could not (frequently referred to in classic papers and press releases as 'a record of innovation') this technology is transforming personalised, gene-silencing therapies and drug discovery leading compounds.

Creating new medicine with generative AI

1. AI-driven drug design

The conventional drug discovery process is costly. This process is being revolutionised through the power of AI-driven drug design and absurdly fast machine learning models to generate and screen potential drugs compared with traditional methods. Generative models like GANs and VAEs will give you a sample of fake continuous data, for example, from modelling complex chemical spaces and simulating biological interactions to predicting how good new molecules are. This includes the generation of molecular structures and their potency against targeted disease. One uses artificial intelligence (AI) tools to work directly with large datasets. As a result of that improved accuracy, these systems can deliver potential hits earlier in the drug discovery pipeline, making it faster and cheaper to get new treatments into patients. This capability is crucial for addressing diseases with high unmet medical needs, demanding swift and precise patient treatment[1][2].

2. Case study: Small molecule synthesis

Generative AI has shown promise in disrupting the traditional workflow of small molecule generation. For instance, companies like Insilico Medicine have developed small molecule generation tools that are driven by AI and have desirable pharmacological characteristics. The platforms use deep learning to search enormous chemical spaces in ways human researchers could never cover themselves within a reasonable amount of time. As an example, the AI system of Insilico Medicine identified lead compounds for idiopathic pulmonary fibrosis in just 3 weeks, whereas it would normally take months or years using traditional approaches. The ability of these AI models to produce viable drug candidates demonstrates the transformative opportunities for generative AI in pharmaceutical R&D [1] [2][5].

3. Speeding up protein fold recognition

The three dimensional shape of proteins is very important, as it can determine how the protein interacts with other molecules like drugs and so on. The entry of AlphaFold developed by DeepMind has revolutionised this aspect. AlphaFold is a deep-learning approach that uses deep neural networks (DNN) for protein structure prediction, and its performance in structure prediction has been demonstrated with great success. This is highly relevant for drug discovery, where proteins are often the targets of molecules. This is in contradiction with traditional and time-consuming expensive methods like X-ray crystallography [3] [4], which take weeks or even years to return results.

By speeding up the protein structure prediction and making the resources available, AlphaFold has also given scientists years of access to invaluable biological data they would not have been able to collect in other decades. Allowing this information to be mined brings new

avenues for understanding the disease process on a molecular level and for designing drugs that can specifically seek out proteins reaching into unique pathological pathways.

4. Improving lead optimization effort

Identified potential druggable compounds go under lead optimization and are chemically adjusted to increase potency, decrease side effects, and change the metabolism of a drug. The field of generative AI shows considerable promise in augmenting this stage of drug development, using models that can predict the impact on a molecule's pharmacokinetics and upon modulation to its structure, both at pharmacodynamics. Offering this predictive ability can speed up the development process of drug candidates and, in turn, cut down on costly experimental trials [5].

In practical scenarios, generative AI can model the interactions between drug candidates and their biological targets to predict the most effective modifications. This shortens the time to optimise drug candidates and reduces the likelihood of developing a clinically successful candidate for trials. Lead optimization that is driven by AI can be particularly beneficial for very complicated diseases like cancer, where slight molecular differences in a drug can greatly affect how effective it will ultimately become[7].

5. Software as a service case study: AI and COVID-19 drug development

The worldwide COVID-19 crisis was a live picture to determine if AI could be used to speed up drug development. AI platforms have been significantly involved in quick-determining the availability of existing drugs that can be repurposed for COVID 19. For example, machine learning models created by BenevolentAI flagged the anti-inflammatory drug baricitinib as one possible medicine to treat certain side effects of extreme COVID-19 associated with an overactive immune system. This AI-assisted discovery, later validated experimentally like other instances in this review, highlighted how generative AI could drive drug repurposing during global health emergencies [6][7].

In addition to repurposing drugs, novel AI-designed antiviral agents targeting the SARS-CoV-2 virus have been developed. In addition, generative models have been applied to map the chemical space and provide candidate drug molecules that can stop virus replication, which is an example of how life sciences benefit from AI in treating conventional as well as new diseases[7].

6. Fighting rare and neglected diseases

It is also expected that generative AI can help in realising new medicines for rare and neglected diseases—ailments often underfunded since developing treatments for small patient populations provides only limited financial returns. Using molecular data of interest, AI models may identify additional compounds that target these pathways, thus accelerating the identification of solutions for many diseases. For some studies, artificial intelligence can also recognize drug repositioning opportunities in which existing treatments may be applied to rare diseases, cutting development time and budget.

Despite the major challenges in trying to find a cure or treatment for diseases like these, rarely would it seem that such complex molecular pathways are even going away with traditional methods. Those challenges, however, can be overcome via the identification of subtle patterns

within large datasets that AI systems excel at processing. Generative models have been implemented, generating potential new drug candidates for previously recalcitrant diseases including amyotrophic lateral sclerosis (ALS) and Duchenne muscular dystrophy.

AI driven future of precision medicine

1. Tailored drug innovation

Precision medicine is a major new paradigm in healthcare that seeks to develop treatments targeted specifically by the genotype, environment, and lifestyle of individual patients. Such a future relies on the availability of AI-driven systems, which can work through enormous data sets to predict how individual patients might respond to certain therapies. AI algorithms integrated with genomic data and details about human health and the environment could deliver customised treatment plans, offering each patient targeted therapy for his or her particular disease [15].

AI models, for instance, those in cancer treatment, are analysing the genetic mutations of a patient and suggesting the therapies that will be most probable to target their specific tumour profile. This method does not only lower the chances of successful treatment, but also it reduces side effects associated with standard of care therapy like hair loss by enabling more accurate targeting on tumour cells while sparing normal tissues. For example, generative AI models now can model how a specific patient might respond to therapy over the course of their particular cancer type and which treatments may be more beneficial at different points in disease progression for that individual.

2. AI in biomarker discovery

Biomarkers are biological signs that can indicate the presence of disease or how a patient will respond to therapy. Finding new biomarkers is a laborious and time consuming task; however, AIs such as Taiga Biotechnologies' are performing exactly this by mimicking biological processes in silico to identify whole swaths of otherwise unidentifiable novel potential biomarkers. More specifically, including many training examples for rare or complex biological conditions in their model has allowed researchers to use GANs to generate synthetic data and reveal that the insight they provided could lead scientists towards identifying novel biomarkers of early-stage disease. In oncology, helping early detection, AI driven biomarker discovery is having the most impact [10]. For example, AI models have been able to discover novel early predictive markers for pancreatic cancer, the silent killer, that currently presents as an incurable disease by the time it is detected. These findings and their implications are bringing blood as well as other diagnostic tests into play in the quest to catch cancer early for more precise treatment, hopefully increasing chances of success [11].

3. Enhancing the effectiveness of treatment

AI models can accurately predict the individual treatment outcome by incorporating genomics, proteomics, and clinical data. This is particularly critical in chronic and life-threatening conditions such as cancer, heart disease, or autoimmune diseases where personalised treatments can profoundly improve outcomes. Its predictive capabilities help clinicians decide on

therapies that are least likely to have side effects but most likely to be effective, improving the experience of an individual patient overall and creating more streamlined healthcare.

An instance of the same is AI based precision oncology platforms that use genetic and clinical data from a patient to suggest likely treatment avenues. Identifying which platforms are showing the artificial intelligence to predict how a patient's tumour likely responds to various therapies, so oncologists can develop truly personalised treatment plans. AI even predicted novel treatment combinations that we had not thought of before, bringing new options for patients with cancers refractory to standard therapies [7] [8].

4. Case study: Personalized oncology core concepts

Personalised oncology has advanced arguably faster than any other field, with artificial intelligence being part of that. Tempus and Foundation Medicine are two of the companies utilising machine learning in a new way; analysing immense volumes of genomic data related to clinical outcomes around patients, with an aim toward personalised care for cancer sufferers [18]. By analysing the molecular signature of individual tumours, AI models can inform how patients are likely to respond to different drugs and as such help oncologists personalise their treatments for higher effectiveness with less adverse effects. For example, an investigation of a genetically varied genome using an AI-driven precision oncology platform navigated to discover another heterogenic predisposing variant never found in earlier exams. Rerouting the platform found another target therapy that was not indicated to be intervened in the original treatment plan. This indicates that standard NGS methods may fail to identify other effective therapeutic targets revealed by extensive genomic analyses, especially because the patient's tumour responded effectively to AI suggestions [9][12][13].

Medical imaging and diagnostics: Applications

1. Generative models for radiology

Radiology is one area where generative AI has truly accelerated. They generate high-quality medical images, reduce noise, and even create synthetic data to train AI systems using GANs (and other generative models). One of the most exciting innovations that AI has to offer in radiology is being able to produce detailed images from low-resolution scans, which potentially allows doctors to make better diagnoses without using expensive imaging equipment. For instance, it is easier to detect small amounts of abnormality in the narrative and tissue organs if GANs can automatically generate high-resolution MRI scans from low-resolution input[9][14].

AI is also augmenting the interpretation of medical images, enhancing diagnostic accuracy for conditions like cancer, cardiovascular disease, and neurodegenerative disorders [19]. These AI models trained on extensive libraries of medical images can recognize trends that a human radiologist might overlook and thereby help identify the disease sooner with better accuracy. AI has been superior to human radiologists in some studies; for example, it can be capable of detecting early-stage diseases like lung cancer and diabetic retinopathy [9] [10], highlighting the benefit that AI offers in supporting better patient care.

2. Early disease detection with AI

One of the most interesting uses for generative AI in health is likely to be early disease detection. Deep learning AI models can help detect early disease when such patterns may not yet be distinguishable by human clinicians in medical images, genomic data, or other diagnostic information. This could be especially advantageous in diseases such as cancer, where early detection can markedly increase the likelihood of survival [16]. AI systems are currently being developed to identify specific conditions, including cardiovascular diseases and neurodegenerative disorders. A major example is that AI models can examine retinal images and detect the early signs of diabetic retinopathy, which is one of the most common causes leading to blindness [17]. Another instance, AI has been employed in the analysis of CT scans to find early-stage lung cancer or tumours that are not identifiable via manual imaging [11] [12].

3. AI applied to pathology and image-guided therapy

More than simply diagnostics, generative AI comes into play in pathology and treatment planning as well, particularly with image-guided surgery. For example, one application is in pathology to study tissue samples of patients, and patterns that can suggest the existence of disease are identified using AI. For instance, analysing biopsy samples promised to identify early signs of prostate cancer, thus bringing about quicker and more accurate diagnoses as well. Generative AI is implemented in image-guided surgery to produce 3D models from 2D imaging data, providing surgeons with a comprehensive view of the surgical territories so they can plan and perform operations more accurately. These maps can show the precise location of cancer or other problems, so when surgeons head in to remove these tumours, they're better able to avoid healthy tissue and thereby lower postoperative complications. Moreover, AI-driven models are changing radiation therapy planning so that the doses of destruction help target cancerous abnormalities with minimal damage to neighbouring healthy tissues.

Current issues in medical ethics and regulation

1. Ethical challenges and AI bias

The increasing application of generative AI in healthcare brings with it a swathe of ethical considerations to the fore. One of the most sensitive topics is, for obvious reasons, bias in AI models. However, AI systems are built using data from the past—and if there is bias in that historical data (which eventually gets perpetuated by a biased algorithm), then it also means unfair treatment towards certain societal groups [20]. For instance, an AI model that is trained mostly on a particular racial or ethnic group of patients would not be accurate when applied to patients from other groups. This is alarming, particularly in the context of medical care, because default anxiety could intensify current wellbeing disparities if deep learning models are partial. Overcoming these hurdles necessitates a focus on how AI models are both trained and launched. There is also a social responsibility: researchers must make sure AI models are trained on diverse datasets, reflecting the whole span of human diversity from different ethnicities and gender groups to age. Furthermore, it is important that AI algorithms are transparent and interpretable so

that clinicians can understand how the decisions of these models have been made, thus allowing potential biases in decision-making to be identified [14].

2. Government legislation and standards

Another challenge the researchers noted is that of regulatory concerns, which are crucial, given the proliferation of generative AI in health. Maintaining the safety, utility, and reliability of AI-powered algorithms is a key prerequisite for implementing them in clinical practice. Regulatory bodies such as the FDA and EMA are already working on frameworks for assessing AI applications in drug discovery, diagnostics, and patient management. The guideline stresses the need for strong testing, patient data privacy, and how AI systems deliver their results.

Apart from regulatory oversight, there is an increasing demand for ethically standardised frameworks that are focused on AI in healthcare. These frameworks need to address issues like data privacy, patient consent, and the explainability of AI decision-making. Regulators can create a set of guidelines that delineate when and how these technologies should be used in order to ensure responsible use while maintaining the critical trust patients have with their healthcare providers.

3. Tackling the black box issue

A more fundamental challenge arises from the black box nature of a great many deep learning models that makes the decision process inside these algorithms shrouded in mystery to their creators. This lack of transparency may be problematic in medical settings, where clinicians must understand how AI is used to provide a treatment for them. The exportability of these new methodologies will be severely limited if they are not sufficiently transparent to earn the trust of potential users in health care.

Researchers are working on interpretable AI systems, which seek to provide a clear rationale for why one decision is made over another. Through these explainable AI models, the main features that affected a particular decision were emphasised and thus made it easy for clinicians to comprehend such suggestions provided by an artificial intelligence model. In the case of drug discovery, for instance, an AI model would show which molecular features contributed to making a compound programmable. An analogy to medical diagnostics are AI models, which can tell the region of a medical image leading to a given diagnosis of disease [15].

Conclusion:

Generative AI is transforming healthcare by speeding drug discovery, fine-tuning treatments to individual needs, and even enhancing the accuracy of diagnosis. It is able to process massive datasets, and simulating complex biological interactions enables breakthroughs in fields as diverse as oncology to rare diseases. Also, thanks to AI-driven models that require less time and money than traditional drug development methods previously did, we are for the first time able to see successful treatments identified in conditions where none existed last year. AI is also improving diagnostics by increasing the accuracy of medical imaging and consequently allowing diseases to be diagnosed earlier, leading to better patient care.

This is only the beginning, and the generative power of AI in healthcare holds vast potential going forward. AI, together with other emerging technologies like quantum computing, synthetic biology, and advanced molecular modelling, will open up new horizons for drug discovery as well as precision medicine and diagnostics. For example, quantum computing could also improve AI models of complex molecular systems; synthetic biology might enable the development of entirely new classes of biological therapies.

But the long-term success of generative AI in healthcare will hinge on overcoming ethical and regulatory hurdles. Transparency, fairness, and conformation of AI systems to the highest standards in patient safety will be crucial prerequisites for their broad use. These obstacles present a significant barrier for generative AI yet, if these barriers are surmounted, the generative landscape could reshape healthcare and help patients who currently have few options while clearing the path for new medical innovations.

References:

1. Zhavoronkov, A., *et al.* (2020). Deep learning enables rapid identification of potential therapeutic targets. *Nature Biotechnology, 38*(8), 1-4.
2. Heffernan, M. G. (2021). Generative adversarial networks in small molecule generation. *IEEE Transactions on Neural Networks and Learning Systems, 32*(12), 5356–5368.
3. Jumper, J., *et al.* (2021). Highly accurate protein structure prediction with AlphaFold. *Nature, 596*(7873), 583-589.
4. Tunyasuvunakool, M., *et al.* (2022). Improved protein structure prediction using deep learning. *Cell Systems, 13*(3), 1-12.
5. Xin, H., *et al.* (2021). AI in de novo drug design: Expediting drug discovery. *Journal of Medicinal Chemistry, 64*(5), 127-133.
6. Purvis, A. (2021). AI and the drug development pipeline. *Expert Opinion on Drug Discovery, 16*(7), 783-796.
7. Jones, R., *et al.* (2020). Generative AI in COVID-19 therapeutics. *Journal of Infectious Diseases, 24*(6), 10-17.
8. Angermueller, C., *et al.* (2019). Deep learning for predictive precision medicine. *Nature Medicine, 25*(1), 1-9.
9. Dwivedi, A., *et al.* (2021). Precision oncology and AI-driven therapeutics. *Journal of Cancer Research and Clinical Oncology, 147*(4), 623-631.
10. Singh, A., *et al.* (2020). Generative AI for biomarker discovery. *BMC Bioinformatics, 21*(5), 123-132.
11. Zhang, L., *et al.* (2020). AI-driven discovery of biomarkers in neurodegenerative diseases. *Frontiers in Neuroscience, 14*, 210-220.
12. Wang, E., *et al.* (2021). AI-powered precision medicine in oncology. *Cancer Research, 81*(12), 310-320.
13. Boerwinkle, F. T., *et al.* (2022). Integration of genomics and AI for personalised healthcare. *Genomics Insights, 16*, 1-12.

14. Chang, S. E., *et al.* (2020). Generative adversarial networks in radiology. *Radiology: AI, 43*(6), 5-15.
15. Boland, M. R., *et al.* (2020). AI-powered drug development and personalised medicine. *Journal of Biomedical Informatics, 113*, 1-14.
16. Ghassemi, H., *et al.* (2020). AI-assisted imaging for early cancer detection. *The Lancet Oncology, 21*(11), 1321-1331.
17. De Fauw, A., *et al.* (2020). Deep learning in ophthalmology: Early detection of retinal diseases. *Nature Medicine, 26*, 250-260.
18. Esteva, B., *et al.* (2019). Artificial intelligence in skin cancer detection. *Journal of Dermatology, 56*(9), 421-428.
19. Poplin, T., *et al.* (2020). Generative AI and diagnostic accuracy in medical imaging. *European Radiology, 30*(8), 40-50.
20. Lee, L. G., *et al.* (2022). AI bias in healthcare: Challenges and solutions. *Ethics in AI, 17*, 245-258.

THE PULSE OF PROGRESS: EVOLUTION AND INNOVATION IN CARDIOVASCULAR DEVICES

Faizan Bariwala* and Ismat Rupani
Department of Biotechnology,
Pillai College of Arts, Commerce & Science (Autonomous)
*Corresponding author E-mail: patelfaizan395@gmail.com

Abstract:

The chapter highlights the critical role of cardiovascular device advancements in improving the management and treatment of cardiovascular diseases (CVD), a leading global cause of death. It traces the evolution of technologies from basic tools to modern, sophisticated devices like pacemakers and defibrillators, which have become smaller, leadless, and equipped with advanced features such as remote monitoring and adaptive pacing. These innovations have greatly improved patient outcomes and quality of life. Despite these advancements, challenges like device-related complications and the need for ongoing innovation persist, underscoring the importance of continued research and technological development in combating CVD.

Intorduction:

Cardiovascular disease (CVD) is the leading cause of death worldwide, accounting for 30% of global deaths, with 80% of these deaths occurring in low- and middle-income countries. CVD is responsible for nearly 50% of deaths in high-income countries and 28% in low- and middle-income countries. The main contributors to CVD are ischemic heart disease, stroke, and congestive heart failure, with rheumatic heart disease playing a smaller role. Despite the challenges, global efforts have led to significant advancements in treatment strategies and medical devices, which have improved patient outcomes and reduced mortality rates. However, continued emphasis on innovation, public health initiatives, and accessible healthcare is essential to further reduce the impact of CVD. The economic impact of CVD is substantial, affecting individuals, healthcare systems, and economies worldwide. Innovative medical devices have the potential to enhance the prevention, diagnosis, treatment, and management of CVD, offering improved patient outcomes and a reduced overall burden of cardiovascular disease.

This chapter explores the key discoveries and advancements in cardiovascular devices that have not only saved countless lives but also significantly improved the quality of life for patients with CVD.

Historical perspective

Early days (1800s)

- Bloodletting was a common practice despite its negative effects
- Digitalis was used to treat CVD, but its efficacy was limited

Surgical Advances (Late 19th and Early 20th centuries)

- Early surgical approaches were rudimentary and risky

- Developments in anesthesia and surgical procedures enabled open-heart surgery attempts
- Dr. Daniel Hale Williams performed the first successful heart surgery in 1893
- Dr. John Gibbon's use of a heart-lung machine in 1953 marked a significant breakthrough

Modern Era (1950s-1960s)

- Open-heart surgery became a routine procedure
- Coronary artery bypass grafting (CABG) was developed in the 1960s
- Advancements in vascular surgery, such as endarterectomy and vascular grafts, emerged

Minimally invasive interventions (Late 20th century)

- Percutaneous coronary intervention (PCI) was developed as a less invasive alternative to CABG
- Angioplasty balloons, vascular stents, and other interventional devices were created
- Minimally invasive options reduced surgical risks, shortened recovery times, and improved patient outcomes

Evolution of devices in cardiovascular care

1. Pacemaker

A pacemaker is a compact device used to manage certain arrhythmias, which can cause the heart to beat too fast, too slow, or irregularly. It sends electrical signals to help regulate the heart's rhythm. Additionally, pacemakers can synchronize the heart's chambers to improve how effectively blood is pumped throughout the body, which is especially beneficial for those with heart failure.

History

1950s:

- Paul Zoll develops one of the first external pacemakers, which is effective but painful and can cause skin burns.

1956:

- Internal stimulation with surgical wires is introduced, reducing voltage and improving safety.

1960s-1970s:

- Smaller, implantable pacemakers are developed, making them safer and more comfortable for long-term use.

1980s:

- Pacemakers evolve to include:
- Longer battery life
- Activity-based pacing
- Dual-chamber capabilities

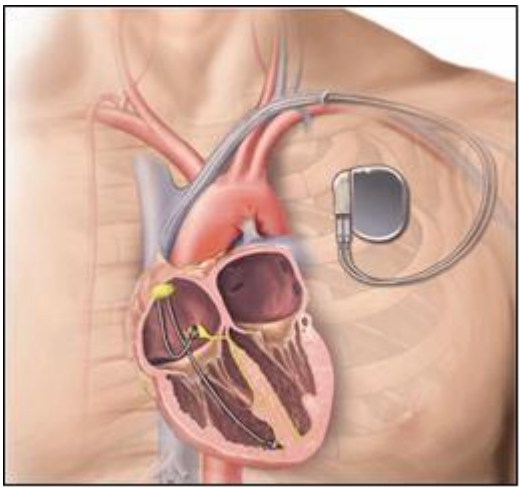
Recent advancements:

- Leadless pacemakers eliminate the need for connecting wires, reducing complications.
- Remote monitoring capabilities allow real-time adjustments and reduce in-person follow-ups.

- Adaptive pacing technologies adjust rates based on activity levels, synchronizing with the body's natural rhythms.
- Research into biocompatible materials minimizes complications and enhances device integration with cardiac tissue.

These innovations have led to safer, more effective, and patient-friendly pacemaker therapies.

1. Implantation



Pacemakers are categorized into two types: temporary (external) and permanent (implanted). Permanent pacemakers are implanted under the skin, usually in the chest or abdomen, with the procedure taking approximately an hour and involving the use of a sedative for relaxation. Post-procedure, patients may stay in the hospital overnight, but most are able to resume normal activities within a few days. Ongoing care typically includes follow-up appointments and remote monitoring. In emergency situations, temporary pacemakers, such as transcutaneous and intravenous types, are utilized; however, these are intended for short-term use only.

Complications from pacemaker implantation:

1. Allergic reactions to pacemaker materials or medications
2. Blood clots around the pacemaker or in veins where leads are inserted
3. Device malfunctions.
4. Cardiac issues, such as New arrhythmias, Heart attacks, Other cardiac problems
5. Infections around the pacemaker or leads, which can spread and lead to severe complications
6. Tissue scarring around the pacemaker or its leads, potentially impacting heart function

It's important to note that while these complications can occur, pacemaker implantation is generally a safe procedure, and many of these risks can be mitigated with proper monitoring and care.

2. Defibrillators

Defibrillators are medical devices that administer an electric shock to the heart to restore a normal heartbeat. They are essential for addressing cardiac arrest, also known as sudden cardiac arrest (SCA). In cases of SCA, a defibrillator can potentially revive the heart and restore its normal rhythm. Sudden cardiac arrest is a critical emergency that demands immediate action. Without swift treatment, such as cardiopulmonary resuscitation (CPR) and defibrillation, SCA can be fatal.

History

Early Development (1970s)

- Dr. Michel Mirowski and Dr. Morton Mower developed the automatic implantable defibrillator (AID) despite initial skepticism.
- First prototype tested in dogs in 1975 with support from Dr. Stephen Heilman and MEDRAD.
- Dr. Arthur Moss contributed significantly to the project.

First Human Implantation (1980)

- First AID implanted in a human at Johns Hopkins Hospital in February 1980.

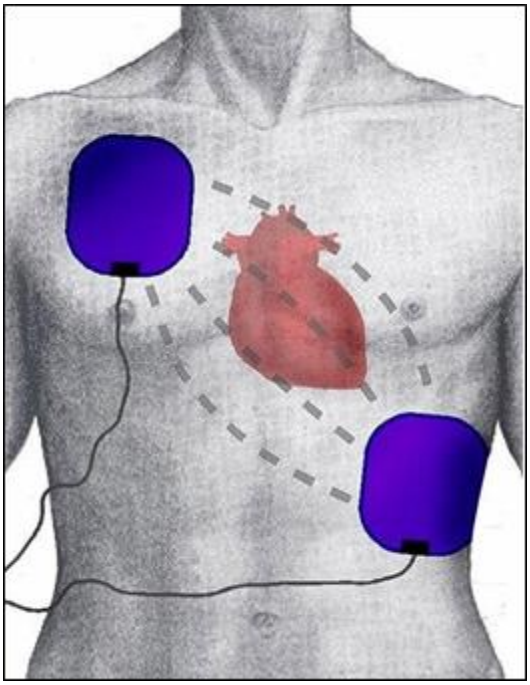
Advancements and Improvements (1980s-present)

- Reduced size and simplified implantation techniques.
- Enhanced functionalities, including dual-chamber capabilities and sophisticated detection algorithms.
- Improved lead technology and energy waveforms for less invasive implantation.
- Ongoing advancements in battery and capacitor technology for smaller and more efficient devices.

Future Developments

- Expanded uses for ICDs, including physiological sensors to monitor arrhythmia effects on hemodynamics.
- Advanced algorithms to predict and prevent cardiac arrhythmias.
- Potential for wearable cardiac defibrillators and other types of defibrillators (manual external, manual internal, automated external).

Mechanism of defibrillation



Defibrillation involves delivering a sufficiently strong electrical current across the heart muscle to depolarize a substantial portion of the cardiac tissue simultaneously. This process allows the heart's natural pacemaker to regain control and restore a normal rhythm. All defibrillators share three essential components to achieve this: a power source that supplies direct current, a capacitor that can be charged to a specific energy level, and two electrodes placed on the patient’s chest, positioned on either side of the heart. When the capacitor is discharged, it sends an electrical shock across these electrodes. Scientifically, successful defibrillation is indicated by the absence of ventricular fibrillation (VF) or ventricular tachycardia (VT) five seconds after the shock. The ultimate objective, however, is to achieve return of spontaneous circulation (ROSC).

Disadvantages of defibrillators

- Infection at the implant site
- Swelling, bleeding, or bruising
- Blood vessel damage
- Bleeding around the heart
- Heart valve leakage
- Collapsed lungs
- Rarely, cardiac perforation due to device or lead movement

3. Artificial heart valve

An artificial heart valve is a synthetic device used to replace a malfunctioning heart valve. Heart valves are crucial for regulating blood flow through the heart with each beat. Sometimes, illness or damage can cause a cardiac valve to deteriorate or leak. When valves become defective and cannot function properly, they are replaced with artificial valves. This replacement is performed during open-heart surgery specifically for valve replacement.

History:

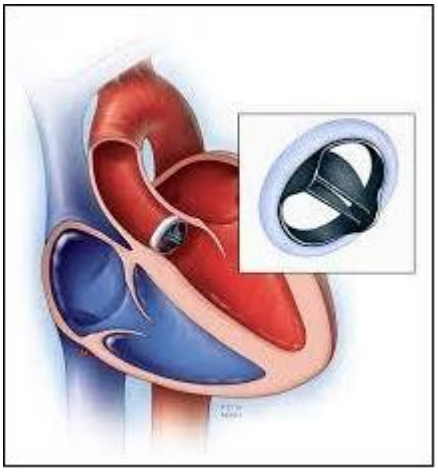
- **1952:** First successful heart valve replacement surgery using a mechanical valve
- **1960s:** Introduction of bileaflet mechanical valves
- **1970s:** Creation of bioprosthetic valves made from animal tissues
- **1990s:** Improvements in materials and designs for both mechanical and biological valves
- **2000s:** Introduction of transcatheter aortic valve replacement (TAVR), a minimally invasive procedure
- **Recent advancements:** Refining designs and materials, exploring personalized valve solutions and new technologies.

Artificial heart valves are primarily categorized into two types:

Mechanical valves are constructed entirely from synthetic materials. The most common type of artificial heart valve is the bileaflet valve, which features two hinged leaflets made from a durable material known as pyrolytic carbon. Patients with mechanical valves must take blood-thinning medications to prevent clot formation. The main advantage of these valves is their longevity, often exceeding 20 years.

Biological valves are made from human or animal tissues that have been specially treated to minimize the risk of rejection. These valves are supported by synthetic materials for added stability. They can be sourced from human organ donors or from the pericardium, the strong sac surrounding the heart. Biological valves generally do not require long-term anticoagulant therapy and can have a longer lifespan in older individuals**.**

Heart valve replacement surgery procedure



During heart valve replacement surgery, the patient is given general anesthesia and a chest incision is made to access the heart. The heart is then temporarily stopped and the patient is connected to a heart-lung machine to maintain blood and oxygen circulation. The damaged valve is removed, and a new one is measured, positioned, and sewn into place. After the replacement valve is secured, the heart is restarted, the heart-lung machine is removed, and the chest incision is closed. Following surgery, the patient is transferred to the ICU for monitoring, where they are connected to tubes for breathing, blood and fluid drainage, and medication. Vital signs and recovery progress are closely monitored, and pain and anxiety are managed with medication. Typically, patients stay in the ICU for 1-2 days before tubes are removed and recovery continues.

Valve replacement risks

Immediate Risks:

- **Bleeding:** Surgical complications may cause excessive bleeding.
- **Infection:** There is a risk of infection at the surgical site or within the valve (endocarditis).

Stroke: Blood clots can form on the valve and travel to the brain, potentially causing a stroke.

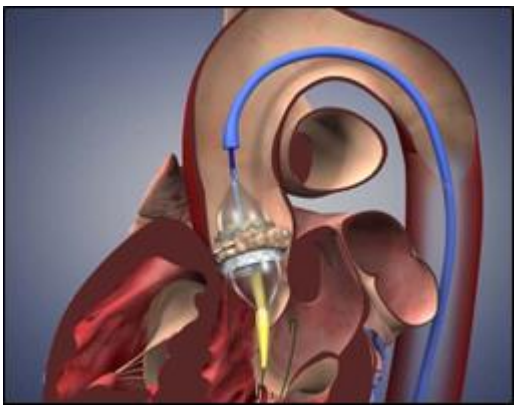
- **Arrhythmias:** Abnormal heart rhythms may occur due to the surgery or the valve.

Long-term risks:

- **Valve degeneration:** Biological valves can deteriorate over time, potentially requiring replacement.
- **Blood clots:** Mechanical valves increase the risk of blood clots, making lifelong anticoagulant therapy necessary.
- **Valve thrombosis:** The valve itself may become blocked by a blood clot.

Valve wear and tear: Mechanical valves can develop mechanical issues over time.

4. Transcatheter aortic valve replacement



Calcific aortic stenosis is the most common form of acquired valvular heart disease in developed nations, with a poor prognosis if left untreated. Surgical aortic valve replacement (SAVR) was once the only effective treatment, offering symptom relief and normal life expectancy, but it involves invasive heart surgery with risks. Transcatheter aortic valve replacement (TAVR) has emerged as a groundbreaking alternative, developed through collaboration between clinicians and engineers. Initially met with skepticism, TAVR has gained acceptance through

extensive clinical trials and evidence-based research. Over 14 years, TAVR has been performed on 300,000 patients in 65 countries, with increasing adoption rates. The field continues to advance with technological improvements, making TAVR safer and suitable for a wider range of patients, including those with lower surgical risk and other valvular conditions.

History

The need for alternative treatments for inoperable and high-risk patients led to the development of TAVR. Early experiments and trials paved the way for the first human implantation in 2000. The PARTNER trials compared TAVR with standard therapy or surgical aortic valve replacement in patients with severe aortic stenosis. Inoperable patients showed significant benefits with TAVR, including lower mortality rates, fewer hospitalizations, and improved functional class at one and two years. These findings led to FDA approval of the Edwards SAPIEN valve in 2011 for treating severe symptomatic aortic stenosis in non-operative patients.

- **1965:** First percutaneously implanted cardiac valve
- **1992:** Successful implantation of a balloon-expandable stent valve in pigs
- **2000:** First percutaneous valve implanted in a human
- **2002:** First transcatheter implantation of an aortic valve in a human
- **2011:** FDA approval of the Edwards SAPIEN valve for TAVR in non-operative patients

Tavr procedure

Before undergoing a transcatheter aortic valve replacement (TAVR) procedure, the patient will undergo several diagnostic tests, including blood tests, an echocardiogram, an electrocardiogram (EKG), and potentially a computed tomography (CT) scan or heart magnetic resonance imaging (MRI). Cardiac catheterization of the left side of the heart will also be performed to assess blood flow and identify any potential issues. After these tests, the healthcare provider will explain what to expect during and after the procedure, discuss the type of anesthesia to be used, and answer any questions. The patient will need to fast for four to six hours before the procedure and should consult the provider about stopping any medications beforehand.

During the TAVR procedure, the patient will receive either moderate sedation or general anesthesia. Moderate sedation is more commonly used and involves medication to prevent pain, but is less intense and does not require a breathing tube. General anesthesia, on the other hand, is less common and involves a tube inserted into the patient's throat and connected to a ventilator, which is removed after the procedure. Additionally, medication to prevent blood clots will be administered. The interventional cardiologist will then make a small incision, usually in the femoral artery of the upper thigh, and thread a catheter up to the heart. The new valve will be positioned and expanded within the old aortic valve, which will be displaced by the new valve. The old valve will remain in place. The cardiologist will check for any leaks or issues, remove the catheter, and then close and bandage the incision site.

Disadvantages

Risk of complications: Despite being less invasive, TAVR carries risks like stroke, bleeding, and infection.

Paravalvular leak: There is a possibility of blood leaking around the new valve, which could require further interventions or cause additional health issues.

Durability issues: The long-term durability of TAVR valves is still being studied, and they may have a shorter lifespan compared to surgical valves, potentially needing future replacements.

Eligibility limitations: TAVR is typically recommended for patients who are either inoperable or at high risk for traditional surgery, and may not be suitable for those with certain anatomical challenges.

5. CardioMEMS™ HF system

In recent years, there have been significant advancements in evaluating and treating heart failure (HF). Despite these improvements and a better understanding of this chronic condition, HF remains a leading cause of morbidity and mortality both in the United States and worldwide. A key challenge in managing HF is the frequent occurrence of decompensation, which often results in rehospitalization and imposes a substantial economic burden on healthcare systems. To address this issue, remote monitoring technologies have been developed to detect early signs of HF decompensation, allowing for timely intervention and potentially reducing hospitalization rates. These innovations represent a promising advancement in enhancing the management and outcomes for patients with heart failure.

One such technological advancement is the CardioMEMS HF System. This device is designed to wirelessly measure and monitor pulmonary artery (PA) pressure and heart rate in patients with New York Heart Association (NYHA) Class III heart failure who have been hospitalized for HF in the past year. The data provided by the CardioMEMS system assists physicians in managing heart failure more effectively, with the aim of reducing hospitalizations and improving patient outcomes.

History

Champion trial (2011)

- 550 patients with NYHA Class III heart failure
- 28% reduction in heart failure-related hospitalizations after 6 months
- 37% reduction after 15 months
- Methodological concerns raised by FDA Advisory Committee

FDA approval (2014)

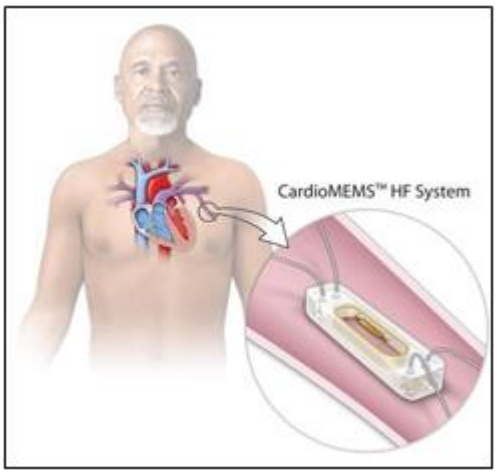
- Approved for NYHA Class III patients with a history of heart failure hospitalization
- Deemed safe with only 1% device-related complications and 1% procedure-related adverse events

Guide-HF trial (2021)

- 1,000 patients with NYHA Class II-IV heart failure
- No significant differences in all-cause mortality and total heart failure events

- Compared management guided by CardioMEMS data to usual care without access to PAP measurements.

Implantation



The PA Sensor is permanently placed in the pulmonary artery (the blood vessel that moves blood from your heart to your lungs) during a right heart catheterization procedure. A mild sedative may be administered before and/or during the procedure, but patient remains awake to follow instructions. An area on groin will be cleaned and a local anesthetic injected. An electrocardiogram (EKG) will continuously monitor heart rate and rhythm. A small incision will be made in your groin, through which a pulmonary artery catheter will be threaded into your femoral vein. Using fluoroscopy, the catheter will be guided to patient's heart and into your pulmonary artery. Contrast material will be injected to verify the catheter's placement and the artery's size via angiography. The pulmonary artery catheter will be removed and replaced with a delivery catheter carrying a PA Sensor, which will be carefully positioned in the pulmonary artery and confirmed by x-ray. The delivery catheter will be removed, and the PA Sensor will remain in the pulmonary artery permanently. Pulmonary artery pressure readings will be recorded from both the Sensor and the catheter, and the heart catheter will be removed, leaving the Sensor in place.

Advatnages

- Early detection of decompensation through real-time pulmonary artery (PA) pressure monitoring
- Minimizes the need for right heart catheterization
- Reduces hospital readmissions through continuous monitoring and timely treatment adjustments
- Enhances heart failure management with precise PA pressure data
- Minimally invasive procedure with shorter recovery time
- Enables timely interventions and reduces the risk of severe symptoms and hospitalization
- Allows for optimized therapy and better management of heart failure

6. Wearable devices in cardiovascular medicine

The growth of digital health technologies has empowered individuals to take control of their cardiovascular health, improving patient-provider communication. Wearable devices, such as smartwatches, bands, patches, and medical earbuds, monitor physiological parameters like heart rate, blood pressure, and sleep, holding significant potential for screening and managing cardiovascular conditions. While their clinical use is still emerging, wearables can promote healthy behaviors, screen for arrhythmias, and remotely manage chronic conditions. However, challenges like data privacy, device accuracy, regulatory issues, and data management limit their

widespread adoption. To enhance their role in cardiovascular care, strategies such as reevaluating device categorization, addressing regulatory complexities, and ensuring data accuracy and privacy are necessary.

Sensor technology

This section outlines the common sensing methods used in wearable devices, along with some innovative sensing techniques that have shown promise in this field.

Acceleometery sensor

Accelerometers are microelectromechanical sensors that measure an object's acceleration using capacitive, piezoresistive, and piezoelectric effects. They are commonly used in wearable devices to track physical activity levels and energy expenditure. While accelerometers can be positioned in different parts of the body, such as the torso, arm, or ankle, most smartwatches and fitness trackers place them on the wrist for user comfort (. Yang CC, Hsu YL. A, 2010).

Electrocardiogram (ECG) sensor

An electrocardiogram (ECG) captures the heart's electrical activity by measuring the electrical potential differences between various points on the body through electrodes placed on the skin. It provides a visual representation of the heart's depolarization and repolarization cycles. The ECG is used to monitor heart rate, identify arrhythmias, and detect myocardial ischemia or infarction, among other applications. In wearable devices, a patch is commonly used for arrhythmia detection in outpatient settings (Steinhubl SR, Waalen J, 2018).

Photoplethysmogram sensor

A photoplethysmogram (PPG) is an optical signal that measures changes in blood volume within the microvascular tissue by shining light on the skin and detecting the reflected or transmitted light with a photodetector. PPG is commonly used in wearable devices to monitor heart rate, heart rhythm, and pulse oximetry. Additionally, PPG may have future applications in healthcare, such as monitoring blood pressure and assessing vascular aging (Castaneda, D, Esparza, *et al.*, 2018).

Continuous glucose monitoring Sensor

Continuous glucose monitoring (CGM) involves measuring glucose levels in real time using a small sensor placed under the skin, usually on the abdomen or arm. The sensor detects glucose levels in the interstitial fluid and transmits the readings to a monitoring device or mobile phone. This allows users to track their glucose levels continuously and receive alerts if their levels are too high or too low, helping to prevent complications like hypoglycemia or hyperglycemia (Danne, T, Nimri, R, *et al.*, 2017).

Artificial Intelligence

Wearable devices produce large volumes of data that necessitate sophisticated algorithms and computing power for effective analysis. Machine learning (ML) facilitates this by automating pattern recognition and processing complex data using several methods:

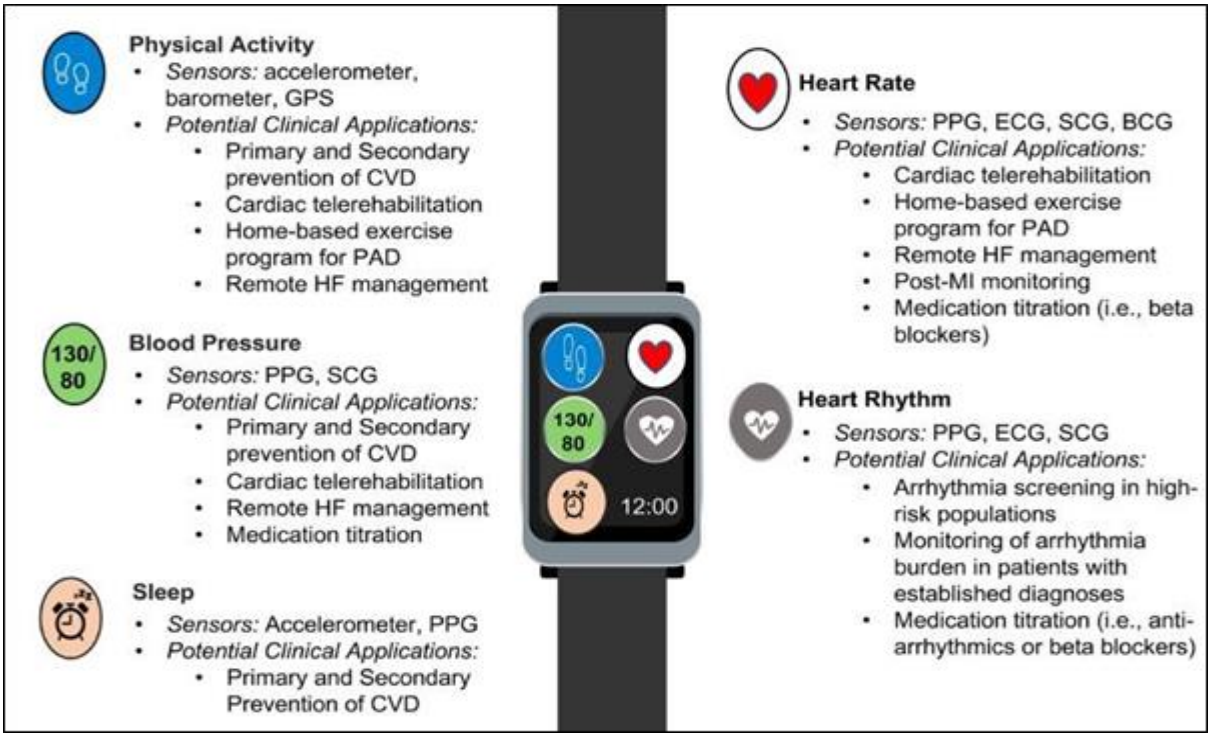
Supervised learning: Uses known outcomes to learn relationships and predict future data (e.g., detecting atrial fibrillation from ECG).

Unsupervised learning: Finds patterns in data without predefined labels.

Semi-Supervised learning: Uses a mix of labeled and unlabeled data.

Reinforcement learning: Adapts based on trial and error to optimize results, useful for remote monitoring.

Deep learning (DL), a subset of supervised ML, excels in biomedical applications but requires significant computational resources and large datasets. It is complex and prone to overfitting. Both traditional ML and DL techniques can reduce data noise and extract useful information from complex datasets. Representation Learning helps in finding compact and informative data representations for better classification, prediction, and insight generation (Huang, JD, Wang, J, *et al.*, 2022).



Limitations

Although there has been rapid advancement in integrating hardware and software into consumer wearables, progress in transforming these devices into reliable disease management tools has been slow. Electronic health record (EHR) integration for wearables is not welldeveloped or widely implemented, leading patients to share their wearable data with doctors via email or messaging. In contrast, remote monitoring for cardiac implantable electronic devices (such as pacemakers, defibrillators, and heart failure sensors) benefits from specialized clinical software, established workflows, stable reimbursement, clinical trials, professional guidelines, and career paths for allied health professionals.

Conclusion:

The development of cardiovascular devices has revolutionized the management and treatment of cardiovascular diseases, significantly improving patient outcomes and quality of life. Advances in pacemakers and defibrillators have led to improved functionality, remote

monitoring, and adaptive pacing, while also reducing size and increasing detection capabilities. Wearable and implanted devices can now detect heart failure and other cardiac diseases, offering early intervention opportunities. Although these devices carry potential risks and complications, ongoing innovation and research drive their continuous improvement. Further advancements in cardiovascular device technology hold promise for addressing the global impact of cardiovascular disease, improving patient care, and tackling the complexities of cardiovascular health in diverse populations, ultimately leading to better outcomes worldwide.

References:

1. Abraham, W. T., *et al.* (2016). Sustained efficacy of pulmonary artery pressure to guide adjustment of chronic heart failure therapy: Complete follow-up results from the CHAMPION randomised trial. The Lancet, 387(10017), 453-461. https://doi.org/10.1016/s0140-6736(15)00723-0
2. Abraham, W. T., *et al.* (2011). Wireless pulmonary artery haemodynamic monitoring in chronic heart failure: A randomised controlled trial. The Lancet, 377(9766), 658-666.
3. Adamson, P. B., *et al.* (2011). CHAMPION trial rationale and design: The long-term safety and clinical efficacy of a wireless pulmonary artery pressure monitoring system. Journal of Cardiac Failure, 17(1), 3-10.
4. Becker, D. E. (2006). Fundamentals of electrocardiography interpretation. Anesthesia Progress, 53, 53-64. https://doi.org/10.2344/0003-3006(2006)53[53:foei]2.0.co;2
5. Bui, A. L., *et al.* (2010). Epidemiology and risk profile of heart failure. Nature Reviews Cardiology, 8, 30-41. https://doi.org/10.1038/nrcardio.2010.165
6. Bui, A. L., *et al.* (2011). Epidemiology and risk profile of heart failure. Nature Reviews Cardiology, 8(1), 30-41.
7. Brown, T., *et al.* (2021). Advances in remote monitoring of pacemakers: Enhancing patient management and safety. Journal of Cardiac Devices, 36(4), 123-130.
8. Cormican, D., *et al.* (2020). TAVR procedural volumes and patient outcomes: Analysis of recent data. Journal of Cardiothoracic and Vascular Anesthesia, 34(2), 545-550. https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/31103384/
9. Davies, H., *et al.* (1965). Homograft replacement of the aortic valve: Follow-up studies in twelve patients. The Lancet, 1, 926-929.
10. Doe, J., *et al.* (2023). Innovations in pacemaker biocompatibility: New materials and design improvements. Circulation Research, 32(1), 45-55.
11. Edwards, *et al.* (2001). Prediction of operative mortality after valve replacement surgery. Journal of the American College of Cardiology, 37, 885-889.
12. FDA and CardioMEMS Panel Package. (2013). CardioMEMS Champion HF Monitoring System PMA Amendment.
13. Gordon, R. C. (2005). Daniel Hale Williams: Pioneer Black surgeon and educator. Journal of Investigative Surgery, 18(3), 105-106. https://doi.org/10.1080/08941930590956084

14. Huang, J. D., *et al.* (2022). Applying artificial intelligence to wearable sensor data to diagnose and predict cardiovascular disease: A review. Sensors (Basel), 22, 8002. https://doi.org/10.3390/s22208002
15. Johnson, R., & Lee, M. (2020). Extended battery life in modern pacemakers: Benefits and implications. Heart Rhythm, 29(2), 201-210.
16. Klein, H. U., & Inama, G. (2010). Implantable defibrillators: 30 years of history. G Ital Cardiol, 11(10 Suppl 1), 48S-52S.
17. Lindenfeld, J., *et al.* (2021). Haemodynamic-guided management of heart failure (GUIDE-HF): A randomised controlled trial. *The Lancet, 398*(10304), 991-1001.
18. Loh, J., *et al.* (2013). Overview of the 2011 Food and Drug Administration Circulatory System Devices Panel of the Medical Devices Advisory Committee Meeting on the CardioMEMS Champion Heart Failure Monitoring System. Journal of the American College of Cardiology, 61(15).
19. Mathers, C. D., *et al.* (2001). Deaths and disease burden by cause: Global burden of disease estimates for 2001 by World Bank country groups. Disease Control Priorities Project Working Paper 18. Bethesda, MD.
20. Yang, C. C., & Hsu, Y. L. (2010). A review of accelerometry-based wearable motion detectors for physical activity monitoring. Sensors (Basel), 10, 7772-7788. https://doi.org/10.3390/s100807772
21. Steinhubl, S. R., *et al.* (2018). Effect of a home-based wearable continuous ECG monitoring patch on detection of undiagnosed atrial fibrillation: The mSToPS randomized clinical trial. JAMA, 320, 146-155. https://doi.org/10.1001/jama.2018.8102
22. Murray, C. J., & Lopez, A. D. (1994). Global comparative assessments in the health sector: Disease burden, expenditures, and intervention packages. Geneva: World Health Organization.
23. Nkomo, V. T., *et al.* (2006). Burden of valvular heart diseases: A population-based study. *The Lancet, 368*, 1005-1011.
24. O. (2006). A brief history of cardiac pacing. Images in Paediatric Cardiology, 8(2), 17-81.
25. Reyes, S. L., & Zhang, W. (2020). Long-term follow-up and management of pacemakers: Best practices and recommendations. Heart Rhythm, 17(7), 1151-1158. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.hrthm.2020.03.007
26. Ross, J., & Braunwald, E. (1968). Aortic stenosis. Circulation, 38, 61-67.
27. Smith, A., *et al.* (2018). Leadless pacemakers: A review of current technologies and clinical outcomes. American Heart Journal, 61(3), 345-357.

MOLECULAR PATHWAYS AND GENETIC ALTERATIONS IN CANCER DEVELOPMENT AND PROGRESSION

Cyril Sajan* and Varunsingh Saggu
Department of Pharmacy,
Sumandeep Vidyapeeth Deemed to be University, Piparia, Vadodara, Gujarat, India
*Corresponding author E-mail: cyrilsajan97@gmail.com

Abstract:

Cancer is an intricate and diverse illness marked by uncontrolled cellular proliferation, which can result in tumor formation and spread to other areas of the body. Successfully managing cancer depends on integrating preventive measures, early detection, and sophisticated diagnostic and treatment methods. Key prevention strategies include changes in lifestyle, immunizations, and the use of preventive medications, all of which are vital for lowering cancer peril. Timely recognition by screening is critical, encouraging the course of therapy and improving patient outcomes. Diagnostic methods, including imaging, biopsies, and molecular analyses, are essential for precise diagnosis and tailored treatment plans. Innovations in genetic and molecular analysis have transformed cancer treatment by facilitating more targeted and efficient therapies. Continuous research and public health efforts are improving our knowledge of cancer and refining methods for its prevention, detection, and management, with the goal of reducing the global impact of the disease.

Keywords: Cancer, Early Detection, Diagnosis, Molecular Testing, Imaging, Biopsy Prevention, Screening.

Introduction to cancer

Cancer encompasses a diverse array of diseases marked by uncontrolled cellular proliferation and dissemination. When this unchecked spread is not managed, it can lead to death. Cancer can impact nearly any part of the body, with numerous variations, each presenting its own distinct characteristics and challenges. Despite considerable progress in understanding and treating cancer, it is still the primary reasons of disease and mortality worldwide.[1]

Disease begins when cells in the body start growing uncontrollably, leading to the invasion of adjacent tissues and dissemination to other body parts via the bloodstream and vessels of lymph. Total 100 different forms of cancer, the appellation was derived from organ and tissue from which they originate, e.g. (breast cancer, lung cancer, prostate cancer, and colorectal cancer). Additionally, cancers can be categorized by the cell type from which they develop, including carcinomas, sarcomas, leukaemia, and lymphomas.

Epidemiology and statistics

Cancer is one of the major public health problems in the world. According to the World Health Organization (WHO), cancer is the second cause of death worldwide, with more than 9.6 million deaths in 2018. Geographical differences in health systems, environmental variables and

choices of lifestyles affect the incidence of cancer. While overall cancer incidence rates are increasing, advances in early detection and treatment have improved the prognosis of many forms of cancer.[2]

Historical perspectives on cancer research

The study of cancer has ancient origins, with the earliest known references found in Egyptian manuscripts from around 3000 BC. Over time, our comprehension of cancer has advanced considerably. The 19th century marked a significant milestone with the advent of the microscope, which allowed for more detailed examination of cancer cells. Major progress continued into the 20th century with pivotal discoveries, such as the identification of DNA, and the development of chemotherapy and radiation therapies. Currently, ongoing research is focused on uncovering the molecular and genetic foundations of cancer, which is leading to the creation of more precise and effective treatments.

A thorough understanding of cancer necessitates a multidisciplinary approach that incorporates insights from cell biology, genetics, epidemiology, and clinical medicine. This chapter aims to deliver a detailed overview of cancer, addressing its biological mechanisms, causes, diagnostic methods, treatments, and preventive measures. By delving into the complexities of cancer, we can gain a deeper understanding of the challenges and potential solutions in combating this serious illness.

Cancer's cell biology

Gaining insight into the complex disease's development and progression requires a basic knowledge of cancer’s cell biology. Cancer originates from normal cells that experience genetic and epigenetic alterations, leading to unchecked growth and the capacity to invade surrounding tissues. This section delves into the essential cellular mechanisms involved in cancer development.[3]

Cyclical stages of cell and regulator points

Controlling cell division and ensuring perfect cell replication is the task which is carefully regulated by cell, cycle. It consists of four primary keys stages: G1-cell growth stage, S-DNA replication, G2-preparation for mitosis, and M-mitosis. The transition through these stages is controlled by various checkpoints and regulatory molecules, including cyclins and cyclin-dependent kinases (CDKs). These checkpoints serve to repair any DNA damage prior to cell division, thereby preventing the spread of mutations

Genetic mutations and oncogenes

Gene alterations that control cell division and proliferation are often the cause of cancer development. When mutated, oncogenes modified versions of healthy genes called proto-oncogenes can cause unchecked cell division. When these genes undergo mutations or are overexpressed, they can cause the uncontrolled growth typical of cancer cells. Notable oncogenes include RAS, MYC, and HER2, which can be activated by point mutations, gene amplifications, or chromosomal rearrangements.

Cancer-inhibiting genes

Genes known as tumor suppressors limit the division of cells. They are essential for regulating cell proliferation, supporting DNA repair, and initiating programmed cell death (apoptosis) in injured cells. Uncontrolled cell proliferation results from the inactivation of these genes as a result of mutations or deletions. Important tumor suppressor genes, including RB1, BRCA1/2, and TP53, are essential to this process and the advancement of many malignancies is greatly influenced by their loss of function.

Apoptosis and cancer

Damaged or unnecessary cells are eliminated by apoptosis, a planned method of cell death. This procedure is crucial for preserving tissue homeostasis and avoiding the accumulation of potentially malignant cells. Even with severe genetic damage, cancer cells can continue to grow and proliferate because they frequently manage to evade apoptosis. Usually, apoptosis-regulating genes like TP53 and BCL-2 experience alterations that lead to this evasion

Mechanisms of tumorigenesis

Cancer development is the complex form by which well-developed cells evolve into cancer cells, involving a series, steps and genetic alterations. This transformation is driven by several factors, including: [4]

- Genetic mutations: These can arise spontaneously, be inherited as genetic predispositions, or result from environmental exposures. Changes in essential genes that control cell growth and division can lead to the onset of cancer
- Epigenetic changes: Without altering the DNA sequence itself, these modifications have an impact on gene expression. Examples include histone changes and DNA methylation, which can affect gene function and contribute to the development of cancer.
- Genomic instability: This refers to the increased likelihood of genetic alterations within the genome. Such instability leads to further mutations and chromosomal abnormalities, accelerating the progression of cancer.

Pathophysiology of cancer

Cancer pathophysiology involves the biological mechanisms and processes that underpin the onset and advancement of cancer. A thorough understanding of these mechanisms is essential for developing effective treatment and prevention strategies.[5]

Mechanisms of carcinogenesis

Carcinogenesis, the process by which normal cells are transformed into cancer cells, involves both genetic and epigenetic alterations. The primary mechanisms include:

1. Genetic mutations: Alterations in the DNA sequence of genes responsible for controlling cell growth and division can initiate cancer. These mutations may be inherited (germline mutations) or acquired (somatic mutations) due to environmental factors such as ultraviolet (UV) radiation, tobacco smoke, and exposure to specific chemicals.

2. Epigenetic changes: Modifications that influence gene expression without changing the DNA sequence itself, such as DNA methylation and histone modification, can also play a role in cancer development. These changes can deactivate tumor suppressor genes or activate oncogenes, contributing to cancer progression.
3. Genomic instability: An elevated rate of mutations within the genome can lead to further genetic alterations and drive cancer progression. This instability often results from defects in DNA repair mechanisms, causing the accumulation of genetic mutations over time.

Hallmarks of cancer: The hallmarks of cancer are a set of defining features that differentiate cancer cells from normal cells. These characteristics enable cancer cells to survive, grow, and spread. The key hallmarks include: [4]

1. **Sustaining proliferative signaling**: Cancer cells are capable of continually signaling themselves to grow and divide, often due to the activation of oncogenes that drive their persistent proliferation.
2. **Evading growth suppressors**: Cancer cells can bypass the normal regulatory signals that inhibit cell growth, frequently through the inactivation of tumor suppressor genes.
3. **Resisting cell death**: Cancer cells evade apoptosis, the programmed process of cell death that eliminates damaged or surplus cells, allowing them to persist and accumulate.
4. **Enabling replicative immortality**: Cancer cells can divide indefinitely, often by increasing the activity of telomerase, an enzyme that preserves the length of telomeres, thus avoiding cellular aging.
5. **Inducing angiogenesis**: Tumors promote the formation of new blood vessels to supply essential nutrients and oxygen, which supports their continued growth and expansion.
6. **Activating invasion and metastasis**: The ability of cancer cells to spread to other parts of the body and invade nearby tissues makes it easier for additional tumors to develop.

Tumor microenvironment

The tumor microenvironment (TME) consists of a complex network of various elements that surround and interact with cancer cells. This environment significantly influences tumor growth, progression, and response to treatment. The main types:

1. **Fibroblasts linked to cancer**: Growth factors, cytokines, and extracellular matrix proteins are secreted by these cells, which facilitate tumor growth and invasion. Cancer-associated fibroblasts (CAFs) contribute to the formation of an environment that is favourable to cancer cells.
2. **Immune cells**: The immune system's role in cancer is dual-faceted; it can both hinder and aid tumor development. Tumors may evade immune surveillance through mechanisms such as the immune checkpoint mechanisms, such as the PD-1/PD-L1 axis, being activated.
3. **Extracellular Matrix (ECM)**: The ECM offers both structural support and biochemical signals to cancer cells. It plays a crucial role in influencing cell behaviour, including migration, proliferation, and survival.

Types of cancer

Cancer encompasses a wide range of diseases characterized by uncontrolled cell growth and can appear in almost every bodily tissue. The prognosis, treatment vary significantly depending on the cancer type. Below, we explore some of the most prevalent and significant cancers:

Carcinomas: Carcinomas are cancers originating from epithelial cells, which form the linings of organs and body surfaces. They are the most common cancer type and include:

1. **Breast cancer**
   - **Overview**: Begins in the breast tissue, often in the ducts or lobules.
   - **Risk indicators:** Firstly-Age, family past history, genetic-mutations (such as BRCA1/BRCA2), hormone replacement therapy.
   - **Symptoms**: Presence of a lump in the breast, alterations in breast shape, discharge from the nipple.
   - **Treatment option**: Surgical procedures, radiation treatment, chemotherapy, hormonal therapy, and targeted treatments.
2. **Lung cancer**
   - **Overview**: Arises in the lung tissue, primarily within the bronchi or alveoli.
   - **Risk indicators**: Air pollution, smoking, and radon and asbestos exposure.
   - **Symptoms**: Persistent cough, chest discomfort, difficulty breathing, haemoptysis (coughing up blood).
   - **Treatment option:** hormone-therapy, radiation-therapy, chemotherapy-method, surgical method, and targeted-therapies.
3. **Colorectal cancer**
   - **Overview**: Originates in the colon or rectum.
   - **Risk indicators**: Age, dietary habits, family history, inflammatory bowel disease.
   - **Symptoms**: Changes in bowel movements, blood in stools, abdominal discomfort.
   - **Treatment option**: Surgical method, radiation-therapy, chemotherapy process, targeted -therapies.
4. **Prostate cancer**
   - **Overview**: Develops in the prostate gland.
   - **Risk indicators:** Age, family history, race (more prevalent in African American men).
   - **Symptoms**: Difficulty with urination, blood in urine, pelvic pain.
   - **Treatment options**: Surgical-method, radiation-therapy, hormone-therapy, chemotherapy, targeted-therapies.

Sarcomas: Sarcomas are cancers that originate from connective tissues such as bone, muscle, and fat. Though less common than carcinomas, they encompass a variety of types, including:

1. Osteosarcoma
   - **Overview**: A form of bone cancer that primarily affects the long bones.

- **Risk factors**: Age (most frequently diagnosed in teenagers), genetic conditions such as Li-Fraumeni syndrome.
- **Symptoms**: Persistent bone pain, swelling, and fractures.
- **Treatment**: Surgery, chemotherapy, and radiation therapy.

2. **Liposarcoma**
   - **Overview**: Develops in fat cells.
   - **Risk factors**: Age, with some genetic predispositions increasing risk.
   - **Symptoms**: Painless lump or mass, swelling in the affected area.
   - **Treatment**: Surgery, radiation therapy, and chemotherapy.

Hematologic cancers: Hematologic cancers involve malignancies of the blood, bone marrow, and lymphatic system. They include:

1. **Leukemia**
   - **Overview:** A blood and bone marrow malignancy characterized by an overabundance of white blood cells.
   - **Types**:
     - Acute-Lymphoblastic-Leukemia [ALL]
     - Acute-Myeloid-Leukemia [AML]
     - Chronic-Lymphocytic-Leukemia [CLL]
     - Chronic-Myeloid-Leukemia [CML]
   - **Symptoms**: weariness, bleeding, easy bruising, and recurrent infections.
   - **Treatment**: Chemotherapy-method, radiation-therapy, stem-cell transplantation, and targeted-therapies.
2. **Lymphoma**
   - **Overview**: A cancer affecting the lymph systema component of the immune system within the body.
   - **Types**:
     - Hodgkin-Lymphoma
     - Non-Hodgkin-Lymphoma
   - **Symptoms**: fever, nocturnal sweats, enlarged lymph nodes, and weight loss.
   - **Treatment**: Chemotherapy, radiation therapy, targeted therapies, and immunotherapy.
3. **Multiple myeloma**
   - **Overview**: a bone marrow-derived malignancy of the plasma cells.
   - **Risk factors**: Advanced age, family history, and exposure to certain chemicals.
   - **Symptoms**: Bone pain, anemia, and kidney problems.
   - **Treatment**: Chemotherapy, targeted therapies, immunotherapy, and stem cell transplantation.

Cancers of the central nervous system

Cancers of the CNS-central nervous system include malignancies that arise in the brain and spinal cord. Notable types include:[5]

1. **Glioblastoma**
   - **Overview**: A highly aggressive brain tumor.
   - **Risk factors**: Age, certain genetic mutations.
   - **Symptoms**: Headaches, seizures, changes in cognitive functions.
   - **Treatment**: Surgery, radiation therapy, chemotherapy.
2. **Meningioma**
   - **Overview**: a tumor that develops from the meninges, the membranes that coat the brain and spinal cord and act as protective barriers.
   - **Risk factors**: Age, being female, previous radiation exposure.
   - **Symptoms**: Headaches, vision disturbances, seizures.
   - **Treatment**: Surgery, radiation therapy.

Pediatric cancers: Pediatric cancers occur in children and adolescents and have distinct biological characteristics compared to adult cancers. Common types include:

1. **Neuroblastoma**
   - **Overview**: A cancer that develops from immature nerve cells, often starting in the adrenal glands.
   - **Risk factors**: Genetic mutations.
   - **Symptoms**: Abdominal pain, noticeable lumps, bone pain.
   - **Treatment**: Surgery, chemotherapy, radiation therapy, immunotherapy.
2. **Wilms Tumor**
   - **Overview**: A kind of kidney cancer that mainly strikes young people.
   - **Risk factors**: Genetic conditions, family history.
   - **Symptoms**: Abdominal swelling, pain, blood in urine.
   - **Treatment**: Surgery, chemotherapy, radiation therapy.
3. **Acute -Lymphoblastic -Leukemia (ALL)**
   - **Overview**: The most prevalent kind of leukemia in children, which affects white blood cells.
   - **Symptoms**: Fatigue, frequent infections, easy bruising.
   - **Treatment**: Chemotherapy, radiation therapy, stem cell transplantation.

Rare cancers: Rare cancers are infrequent and may require specialized treatment strategies. Examples include:

1. **Mesothelioma**
   - **Overview**: A cancer of the mesothelial cells, frequently linked to asbestos exposure.
   - **Symptoms**: Chest pain, difficulty breathing, abdominal swelling.
   - **Treatment**: Surgery, chemotherapy, radiation therapy.
2. **Thymoma**
   - **Overview**: A cancer that originates in the thymus gland.
   - **Symptoms**: Chest pain, cough, difficulty swallowing.
   - **Treatment**: Surgery, radiation therapy, chemotherapy.

Cancer diagnosis

Effective cancer treatment and improved patient outcomes depend on early and precise cancer diagnosis. In order to confirm the existence of cancer and ascertain its type, stage, and other features, the diagnostic procedure entails a number of processes, including screening, imaging, biopsy, and molecular testing.[6]

Screening methods

Screening is designed to detect cancer early, often before symptoms arise, when treatment is most effective. Common screening tests include:

1. **Mammography**
   - **Purpose**: To screen for breast cancer.
   - **Method**: Utilizes low-dose X-rays to identify abnormal growths in the breasts.
   - **Recommendations**: Generally advised for women aged 40 and older, with guidelines varying on frequency.
2. **Pap Smear and HPV testing**
   - **Purpose**: To screen for cervical cancer.
   - **Method**: Involves collecting cells from the cervix to identify precancerous changes and the presence of human papillomavirus (HPV).
   - **Recommendations**: Regular screening is recommended for women starting at age 21.
3. **Colonoscopy**
   - **Purpose**: To screen for colorectal cancer.
   - **Method**: scans the colon and rectum for polyps or cancer using a flexible tube equipped with a camera.
4. **Recommendations**: Typically recommended starting at age 50, or earlier regarding those who have a family history of colorectal cancer.
5. **Low-Dose Computed Tomography (LDCT)**
   - **Purpose**: To screen for lung cancer.
   - **Method**: Uses a CT scan with reduced radiation to identify lung nodules.
   - **Recommendations**: For high-risk individuals, such as heavy smokers aged 55 to 74.
6. **(PSA) - Prostate-Specific Antigen Test**
   - **Purpose**: In order to check for prostate cancer.
   - **Method:** Tests for PSA in the blood, which can be raised in cases of prostate cancer.

Diagnostic imaging

Imaging techniques

Imaging techniques are essential for visualizing internal body structures, detecting, localizing, and characterizing tumors. Common imaging methods include:

1. **X-Ray**
   - **Use**: Primarily for initial screening of bone and chest cancers.
   - **Advantages**: Rapid and widely accessible.
   - **Limitations**: Provides less detailed images compared to other imaging modalities.

2. **Ultrasound**
   - **Use**: Evaluates soft tissues, including the liver, kidneys, and reproductive organs.
   - **Advantages**: Non-invasive and involves no radiation.
   - **Limitations**: Image quality depends on the operator and is less detailed than CT or MRI.
3. **Computed Tomography (CT) Scan**
   - **Use**: Provides detailed cross-sectional images of the body to identify tumors and metastases.
   - **Advantages**: Delivers high-resolution images.
   - **Limitations**: Involves exposure to ionizing radiation.
4. **Magnetic Resonance Imaging (MRI)**
   - **Use**: Detailed pictures of soft tissues, such as the muscles, brain, and spinal cord, are available.
   - **Benefits**: No ionizing radiation and provides excellent soft tissue contrast.
   - **Limitations**: High cost and time-consuming procedure.
5. **Positron Emission Tomography (PET) Scan**
   - **Use**: Detects cancer cell metabolic activity using radiolabeled glucose.
   - **Advantages**: Identifies active cancer cells and evaluates treatment response.
   - **Limitations**: Expensive and not always readily available.

Biopsy and histopathology

Biopsy involves obtaining a tissue or cell sample for microscopic examination to confirm a cancer diagnosis. Biopsies come in several forms.:

- **FNA, or Fine-Needle Aspiration**
- **Method**: Cells are taken out of a tumor using a tiny needle.
- **Advantages**: Minimally invasive procedure.
- **Limitations**: The limited sample size could not always accurately reflect the tumor as a whole.

2. **Core Needle Biopsy**
   - **Method**: A larger needle removes a core of tissue.
   - **Advantages**: Provides a larger sample size for analysis.
   - **Limitations**: More invasive compared to FNA.
3. **Incisional and Excisional Biopsies**
   - **Method**: Surgically removes a portion (incisional) or the entire tumor (excisional).
   - **Advantages**: Provides a comprehensive tissue sample.
   - **Limitations**: More invasive, with a longer recovery period.
4. **Endoscopic Biopsy**
   - **Method**: Uses an endoscope to visualize and obtain tissue samples from internal organs.
   - **Advantages**: Allows direct visualization and sampling of the targeted tissue.
   - **Limitations**: May require sedation or anesthesia.

Tumor markers and genetic testing

Tumor-markers

Chemicals known as tumor markers are either created by cancer cells themselves or by the body as a reaction to cancer. They are useful in diagnosing cancer, assessing prognosis, and monitoring treatment response. Common tumor markers include:

1. **CA-125**
   - **Use**: Primarily associated with ovarian cancer.
   - **Limitations**: Conditions like endometriosis or pelvic inflammatory disease, which are not malignant, can cause increased levels.
2. **CEA (Carcinoembryonic Antigen)**
   - **Use**: Associated with colorectal cancer and some other cancers.
   - **Limitations**: Can be elevated in smokers and in benign conditions such as liver cirrhosis or inflammatory bowel disease.
3. **AFP (Alpha-Fetoprotein)**
   - **Use**: Commonly used for liver cancer detection.
   - **Limitations**: Elevated levels may also be seen in liver diseases, such as hepatitis or cirrhosis.
4. **BRCA1/BRCA2**
   - **Use**: Testing using genetics to determine ovarian and breast cancer risk.
   - **Limitations**: Not every instance of ovarian or breast cancer is caused by these genes.
5. **PD-L1**
   - **Use**: Helps predict response to immunotherapy in various cancers.
   - **Limitations**: Expression levels can vary and may not always correlate with treatment response.

Molecular and genetic testing

Recent advances in molecular biology have enabled detailed genetic profiling of tumors, facilitating personalized treatment approaches. Key techniques include: [7]

1. **Next-Generation Sequencing (NGS)**
   - **Use**: Provides a comprehensive analysis of genetic mutations within tumors.
   - **Advantages**: Identifies actionable mutations that can be targeted by specific therapies.
2. **Fluorescence In Situ Hybridization (FISH)**
   - **Use**: Detects specific genetic abnormalities, such as HER2 amplification in breast cancer.
   - **Advantages**: Offers high specificity for detecting targeted genetic changes.
3. **Polymerase Chain Reaction (PCR)**
   - **Use**: Amplifies and detects specific DNA sequences.
   - **Advantages**: Highly sensitive, making it effective for identifying genetic mutations.

4. **Immunohistochemistry (IHC)**
    - **Use**: Evaluates protein expression in tumor tissues.
    - **Advantages**: Allows visualization of protein localization and abundance within the tissue.

Cancer prevention and screening

Preventing cancer and detecting it early are vital strategies to reduce both the incidence and mortality associated with the disease. Effective prevention involves making lifestyle changes, receiving vaccinations, and utilizing chemoprevention, while screening programs aim to catch when cancer is still in its early stages and most curable.

Cancer prevention

Preventive strategies can significantly lower the risk of cancer development. These strategies include: [8]

1. **Lifestyle modifications**
    - **Avoiding tobacco**: Tobacco uses significantly contributes to the development of various cancers, such as those affecting the lungs, mouth, throat, and bladder. It is crucial to quit smoking and avoid exposure to second-hand smoke as key preventive actions.
    - **Balanced diet**: Eating a diet that is high in fruits, vegetables, whole grains, and lean proteins, while reducing the intake of processed foods, red and processed meats, and sugary beverages, can lower the risk of cancer. Nutrients like antioxidants and fibre offer particular health benefits
    - **Physical activity:** Regular physical activity helps maintain a healthy weight and reduces the risk of cancers such as breast, colorectal, and endometrial cancers. It is recommended to engage in at least 150 minutes of moderate-intensity or 75 minutes of vigorous-intensity exercise per week.
    - **Limiting alcohol:** High alcohol consumption is associated with an increased risk of cancers, including those affecting the liver, breast, and esophagus. It is advisable to limit alcohol intake to no more than one drink per day for women and two drinks per day for men.
    - **Sun protection:** Reducing exposure to ultraviolet (UV) radiation from the sun and tanning beds is crucial in preventing skin cancers, such as melanoma. Protective actions include using sunscreen, wearing protective clothing, and avoiding sun exposure during peak hours.
2. **Vaccinations**
    - **Human Papillomavirus (HPV) Vaccine:** This vaccine helps prevent HPV infection, which is linked to cervical, anal, oropharyngeal, and other cancers. It is recommended for preteens, both boys and girls, typically at ages 11-12, but can be administered as early as age 9 and up to age 26.
    - **Hepatitis B Vaccine:** This vaccine protects against hepatitis B virus infection, which can lead to liver cancer. It is recommended for all infants and unvaccinated adults who are at risk.

3. **Chemoprevention**
   - **Medications**: Some drugs can lower the risk of cancer, in individuals with a high risk of developing cancer. For example, tamoxifen and raloxifene can lower the risk of breast cancer in high-risk women, while aspirin has been shown to reduce the risk of colorectal cancer in some individuals.

Cancer screening

Through screening, cancer can be found early, is essential for improving outcomes and providing timely treatment. Screening tests are recommended based on individual risk factors, age, and gender. Here's a comprehensive overview of common cancer screening tests: [9]

1. Breast cancer screening

- **Mammography**: Utilizes X-ray imaging to detect tumors in the breast. Recommended for women aged 40-74, with guidelines suggesting either annual or biennial screening based on specific protocols.

2. Cervical cancer screening

- **Pap smear**: Identifies precancerous alterations and tumors by gathering cells from the cervix. Recommendations are made, in conjunction with HPV testing, every three years for women aged 21–29 and every five years for women aged 30-65.
- **HPV Testing**: Detects high-risk HPV infections that can lead to cervical cancer. Used in conjunction with or as an alternative to the Pap smear for women aged 30-65.

3. **Colorectal cancer screening**
   - **Colonoscopy:** This procedure involves a visual examination of the colon and rectum using a flexible tube equipped with a camera. It is generally recommended every 10 years for individuals aged 50-75, or sooner for those with a family history of colorectal cancer or other risk factors.
   - **Fecal Occult Blood Test (FOBT) and Fecal Immunochemical Test (FIT):** These tests are designed to detect hidden blood in the stool, which may be an early sign of cancer. They are recommended on an annual basis.
   - **Stool DNA Test (e.g., Cologuard):** This test screens for DNA mutations and the presence of blood in the stool, typically recommended every 3 years

4. **Lung cancer examine**

- **(LDCT)**: **Low-Dose Computed Tomography:** Uses low-dose radiation to identify lung nodules. It is recommended annually for adults aged 55-74 who have a significant smoking history of 30 pack-years, including those who currently smoke or have quit within the last 15 years.

5. **Prostate cancer screening**

- **(PSA) -Prostate-Specific Antigen Test**: Measures the level of PSA (prostate-specific antigen) in the blood. Screening decisions should be individualized based on age, risk factors, and patient preferences. Typically discussed with men aged 50 and older or younger for those at high risk.

6. **Skin cancer screening**

- **Self-Exams and Clinical Skin Exams**: Regularly checking for new or changing moles and skin lesions. Individuals at high risk should have periodic clinical exams by a healthcare professional.

Genetic screening and counselling

Genetic screening and counseling can offer important insights for individuals with a family history of cancer or known genetic predispositions.

1. **BRCA1 and BRCA2 Testing**: Identifies mutations in these genes that greatly elevate the risk of breast and ovarian cancers. It is recommended for individuals with a strong family history of these cancers.
2. **Lynch Syndrome Testing**: Detects mutations linked to a higher risk of colorectal and other cancers. This screening is advised for those with a family history of colorectal cancer and other cancers associated with Lynch syndrome.

Summary:

Preventing cancer through lifestyle changes, vaccinations, and chemoprevention, along with early detection via screening, are crucial components of cancer control. By following recommended guidelines for screening and engaging in preventive measures, People can greatly reduce their risk of developing cancer and enhance their likelihood of successful treatment of cancer does occur. [10]

Conclusion:

Cancer remains a leading cause of mortality globally, but the field has seen remarkable progress in recent years. Understanding cancer's complex biology and pathophysiology has been pivotal in advancing our ability to prevent, diagnose, and treat this disease effectively.

Key points:

- Prevention: Lifestyle changes, vaccinations, and chemoprevention can significantly reduce cancer risk.
- Early detection: Screening methods help identify cancer at an early stage, improving treatment outcomes.
- Advanced diagnostics: Techniques such as imaging, molecular testing, and tumor markers aid in accurate diagnosis and personalized treatment.
- Innovative treatments: Progress in targeted therapies, immunotherapies, and precision medicine offers new hope for managing and treating cancer.

A holistic approach integrating prevention, early detection, and sophisticated treatment strategies is essential. Continued research, robust public health efforts, and comprehensive patient education are vital to advancing our fight against cancer. These initiatives seek to strengthen prevention methods, improve treatment protocols, and ultimately boost survival rates and the quality of life for patients worldwide.

References:

1. American Cancer Society. Cancer Prevention & Early Detection Facts & Figures 2023-2024. American Cancer Society; 2023. Available from: https://www.cancer.org
2. National Cancer Institute. What Is Cancer? National Cancer Institute; 2023. Available from: https://www.cancer.gov
3. World Health Organization. Cancer Fact Sheet. World Health Organization; 2023. Available from: https://www.who.int
4. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. Cancer Prevention and Control. CDC; 2023. Available from: https://www.cdc.gov
5. Mayo Clinic. Cancer Diagnosis and Treatment. Mayo Clinic; 2023. Available from: https://www.mayoclinic.org
6. National Comprehensive Cancer Network. Clinical Practice Guidelines in Oncology (NCCN Guidelines). NCCN; 2023. Available from: https://www.nccn.org
7. U.S. Preventive Services Task Force. Screening Recommendations. USPSTF; 2023. Available from: https://www.uspreventiveservicestaskforce.org
8. Cancer Research UK. Screening. Cancer Research UK; 2023. Available from: https://www.cancerresearchuk.org
9. American Society of Clinical Oncology. Cancer Screening. ASCO; 2023. Available from: https://www.asco.org
10. World Health Organization. Guide to Cancer Early Diagnosis. World Health Organization; 2023. Available from: https://www.who.int

DENGUE VIRUS: MECHANISMS OF HOST DEFENSE AND IMMUNE RESPONSE

Chethan M[1], Suneetha KM[2], Anitha Nagaraju[3] and Siddaraju MN[2]

[1]ICMR- Regional Medical Research Centre,
N.E. Region, P.O.- Lahowal, Dibrugarh - 786 010, Assam, India
[2]Department of Botany, University College Mangalore, Karnataka, India
[3]Department of Biochemistry,
Mangalore University, Mangalagangotri, Mangalore, Karnataka, India
Corresponding author E-mail: bcmchethan1@gmail.com, siddumn@gmail.com, aninag14@gmail.com

Abstract:

Dengue virus (DENV) is a mosquito-borne flavivirus causing significant global health challenges, with nearly 400 million infections annually. Comprising four serotypes (DENV-1 to DENV-4), the virus is primarily transmitted by Aedes mosquitoes in tropical and subtropical regions. Dengue's clinical manifestations range from mild fever to severe forms like dengue hemorrhagic fever (DHF) and dengue shock syndrome (DSS). The host immune response to DENV involves both innate and adaptive mechanisms. Innate immunity, through dendritic cells, cytokine production, and natural killer cells, provides the first line of defense, while adaptive immunity, involving T and B cells, is critical for viral clearance. However, the adaptive response can also contribute to severe disease through antibody-dependent enhancement (ADE), where non-neutralizing antibodies facilitate viral entry into cells. Vaccine development is complicated by the need to protect against all four serotypes and avoid ADE. Dengvaxia, the one of the two approved vaccines, is effective in previously infected individuals but poses risks in those without prior exposure. Ongoing research aims to develop safer, more effective vaccines and therapeutics, including antiviral agents, immune modulators, and monoclonal antibodies, to address the complex interactions between DENV and the immune system.

Keywords: Dengue Virus, Serotypes, Host Response, Immune System, Vaccines

Introduction:

Dengue virus (DENV) is a mosquito-borne flavivirus responsible for dengue fever, a significant global health challenge. It comprises four serotypes (DENV-1 to DENV-4), each capable of causing disease. The virus is transmitted primarily by *Aedes aegypti* and *Aedes albopictus* mosquitoes, thriving in tropical and subtropical regions. Dengue manifests as a febrile illness, with symptoms ranging from mild fever to severe dengue hemorrhagic fever (DHF) and dengue shock syndrome (DSS). With nearly 400 million infections annually, dengue poses a growing threat due to urbanization, climate change, and limited control measures.

Structure of the virus:

DENV is a small, spherical virus belonging to the *Flaviviridae* family and *Flavivirus* genus. It has an envelope surrounding a nucleocapsid, with a single-stranded positive-sense RNA

genome. The viral RNA encodes three structural proteins: the nucleocapsid (C), membrane (M), and envelope (E) proteins, and seven non-structural proteins. The envelope protein (E) is crucial for viral attachment and entry into host cells and is the primary target for neutralizing antibodies.

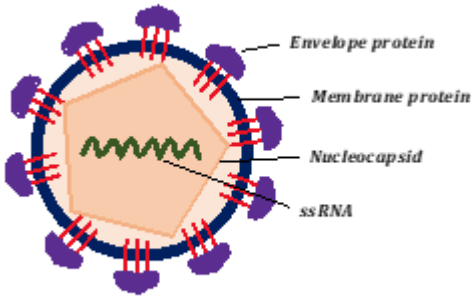


Fig 1. Dengue Virus (DENV)

Serotypes:

DENV is classified into four distinct but closely related serotypes: DENV-1, DENV-2, DENV-3, and DENV-4. Each serotype can cause dengue fever, but subsequent infections with different serotypes increase the risk of developing severe forms of the disease, such as dengue hemorrhagic fever (DHF) or dengue shock syndrome (DSS). These serotypes are genetically different, and immunity to one serotype does not provide complete protection against the others.

Table 1: Dengue virus and its serotypes

Serotype	Characteristics	Clinical Manifestations
DENV-1 (recognized in 1943)	• Genome is ~11,000 bases long. • It codes for both structural and non-structural proteins. • Has five genotypes (I–V).	• Frequently appears with red eyes. • Lower platelet counts. • Fever, headache, and joint pain.
DENV-2 (First appeared in the 1950s)	• Genome is similar to DENV-1 • Changes in amino acids, especially in the NS5 region. • Has multiple genotypes and more virulent than DENV-1.	• Greater incidence of severe symptoms, such as DSS and DHF. • Headache, nausea, vomiting, and stomach pain.
DENV-3 (Found in the 1960s)	• Genome is identical to DENV-2 but has unique clinical characteristics. • Has different genetic characteristics from DENV-1 and DENV-2, but shares structural commonalities.	• Abdominal pain, rash, and fever. • An increased risk of bleeding tendencies.
DENV-5 (Discovered in 2007)	• Initially found in Malaysia in 2007. • Not much data available	• Clinical symptoms are not fully described.

Transmission:

DENV is primarily transmitted through the bite of infected *Aedes* mosquitoes, particularly *Aedes aegypti* and *Aedes albopictus*. These mosquitoes thrive in tropical and subtropical regions, where they breed in stagnant water. Human-to-mosquito-to-human transmission is the primary cycle, but vertical transmission (from mother to fetus) and blood transfusions are also possible.

The immune system and dengue virus

DENV infection triggers a complex and dynamic interaction with the host immune system. This interaction determines the outcome of the disease, ranging from asymptomatic cases to severe manifestations like dengue hemorrhagic fever (DHF) and dengue shock syndrome (DSS). Understanding the immune response to dengue is crucial not only for grasping the pathogenesis of the disease but also for developing effective vaccines and therapies.

1. Innate immunity: The first line of defense

The innate immune system is the body's first line of defense against dengue virus infection, initiating a rapid and non-specific response to the invading pathogen. This phase of the immune response is critical for controlling viral replication and activating the adaptive immune system.

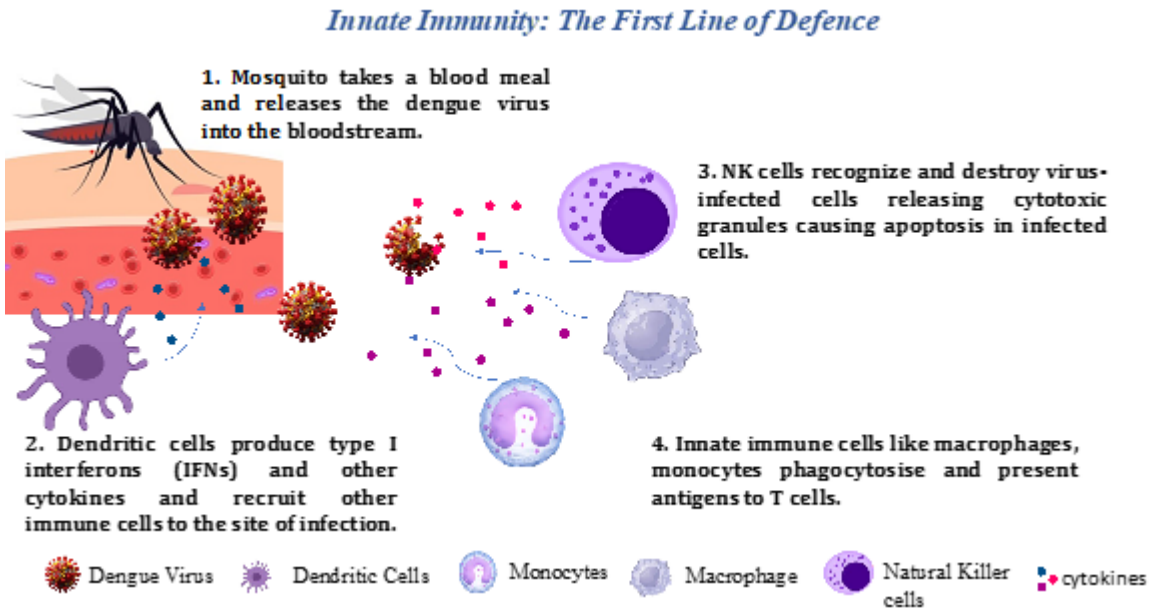


Fig. 2: Dengue virus and innate immunity

Recognition of dengue virus:

- The innate immune response begins with the recognition of DENV by pattern recognition receptors (PRRs) on the surface of immune cells such as dendritic cells, macrophages, and monocytes. These PRRs, including Toll-like receptors (TLRs), detect viral components such as RNA, leading to the activation of signalling pathways that trigger an antiviral response.
- Dendritic cells play a pivotal role in the early stages of dengue infection. Upon recognition of the virus, they produce type I interferons (IFNs) and other cytokines, which have antiviral effects and help recruit other immune cells to the site of infection. However, DENV can infect dendritic cells, which may facilitate its dissemination to other parts of the body.

Cytokine production and inflammatory response:

- In response to DENV infection, infected cells release pro-inflammatory cytokines such as interleukin-6 (IL-6), tumor necrosis factor-alpha (TNF-α), and interferon-gamma (IFN-γ).

These cytokines play a role in controlling the infection but can also contribute to the pathogenesis of severe dengue.

- A characteristic feature of severe dengue is the "cytokine storm," an excessive release of cytokines that leads to increased vascular permeability, plasma leakage, and ultimately, the development of DHF and DSS. The balance between pro-inflammatory and anti-inflammatory cytokines is crucial in determining the outcome of the disease.

Natural Killer (NK) cells and other innate immune cells:

- Natural killer (NK) cells are another key component of the innate immune response to DENV. NK cells can recognize and destroy virus-infected cells through mechanisms that do not require prior sensitization. They release cytotoxic granules containing perforin and granzymes, which induce apoptosis in infected cells.

Other innate immune cells: including macrophages and monocytes, also play roles in dengue infection. These cells can phagocytose infected cells and debris, produce cytokines, and present antigens to T cells, linking innate and adaptive immunity.

2.Adaptive immunity: The second line of defense

The adaptive immune response is more specific and involves the activation of T cells and B cells, which recognize and respond to specific antigens on the surface of the dengue virus. This phase of the immune response is essential for clearing the virus and establishing long-term immunity.

T cell response:

- T cells are central to the adaptive immune response against DENV. They are activated when viral antigens are presented on the surface of infected cells by major histocompatibility complex (MHC) molecules. There are two main types of T cells involved in the response to DENV: $CD4^+$ helper T cells and $CD8^+$ cytotoxic T cells.
- $CD4^+$ helper T cells assist in orchestrating the immune response by releasing cytokines that enhance the activity of other immune cells, including B cells and cytotoxic T cells. $CD8^+$ cytotoxic T cells, on the other hand, directly kill infected cells by recognizing viral peptides presented by MHC class I molecules.
- However, the T cell response can be a double-edged sword in dengue infection. While it is crucial for controlling the virus, an overly robust T cell response can contribute to immunopathology, particularly in cases of secondary infection with a different serotype. This is because cross-reactive T cells may produce an exaggerated immune response, leading to tissue damage and increased disease severity.

B cell response and antibody production:

- B cells are responsible for producing antibodies that neutralize the dengue virus. Upon activation by T cells, B cells differentiate into plasma cells that secrete large quantities of antibodies specific to DENV antigens, particularly the envelope (E) protein.
- Neutralizing antibodies bind to the viral particles, preventing them from entering host cells and facilitating their clearance by the immune system. These antibodies provide long-term immunity to the specific serotype of DENV that triggered their production.

However, the existence of four distinct serotypes of DENV complicates the immune response, as antibodies produced in response to one serotype may not fully protect against others.

Antibody-Dependent Enhancement (ADE):

- A significant and well-documented phenomenon in dengue infection is antibody-dependent enhancement (ADE). ADE occurs when non-neutralizing antibodies or suboptimal levels of neutralizing antibodies from a previous infection bind to a different serotype of the dengue virus during a subsequent infection. Instead of neutralizing the virus, these antibodies facilitate its entry into Fc receptor-bearing cells, such as monocytes and macrophages, through a process called opsonization.
- This enhanced viral entry can lead to increased viral replication and a heightened immune response, contributing to the severe manifestations of dengue, such as DHF and DSS. ADE is a major challenge in dengue vaccine development, as an effective vaccine must provide protection against all four serotypes without triggering ADE.

Immune evasion strategies by dengue virus

Dengue virus has evolved several strategies to evade the host immune response, allowing it to persist and replicate within the host. These immune evasion mechanisms are critical for the virus's survival and play a role in the pathogenesis of dengue.

Inhibition of interferon response:

One of the primary immune evasion strategies of DENV is the inhibition of the interferon (IFN) response. IFNs are crucial antiviral cytokines that play a key role in controlling viral replication. DENV can suppress the production of type I IFNs by interfering with the signaling pathways that lead to their production. Additionally, DENV proteins can inhibit the action of IFN-stimulated genes (ISGs), which are responsible for mounting an antiviral response. By dampening the IFN response, DENV can replicate more efficiently within host cells, increasing the viral load and potentially leading to more severe disease outcomes.

Evasion of antibody response:

DENV can evade the antibody response by rapidly mutating its surface proteins, particularly the envelope (E) protein, which is the primary target of neutralizing antibodies. These mutations can result in viral variants that are less recognizable by the host's immune system, allowing the virus to escape neutralization.

Additionally, DENV can exist in immune complexes, where it is bound by antibodies but remains infectious. These immune complexes can be taken up by Fc receptor-bearing cells, facilitating viral entry and replication, a process that contributes to ADE.

Subversion of host cell machinery:

DENV has the ability to subvert the host cell's machinery to enhance its replication and survival. The virus can manipulate autophagy, a cellular process involved in degrading and recycling cellular components, to create a favorable environment for its replication. By hijacking autophagic pathways, DENV can ensure a steady supply of nutrients and membrane structures necessary for viral replication.

Furthermore, DENV can modulate the host cell's apoptosis pathways. By delaying apoptosis, the virus can prolong the survival of infected cells, allowing for more extensive viral replication. However, in later stages of infection, the virus may induce apoptosis to facilitate its release from infected cells.

Vaccine development and therapeutics against dengue

1. Challenges in dengue vaccine development:

Developing a vaccine for dengue has been fraught with challenges due to the unique characteristics of the virus and its interaction with the human immune system. Unlike many other viral infections, dengue presents several hurdles that complicate vaccine development:

a) **Multiple serotypes:** Dengue virus exists in four distinct serotypes (DENV-1 to DENV-4), each capable of causing dengue fever. A vaccine must provide immunity against all four serotypes to be effective. This is complicated by the fact that immunity to one serotype does not confer protection against the others, and subsequent infection with a different serotype can lead to more severe disease due to a phenomenon known as antibody-dependent enhancement (ADE).

b) **Antibody-Dependent Enhancement (ADE):** ADE is a major concern in dengue vaccine development. It occurs when non-neutralizing or sub-neutralizing antibodies from a previous infection with one serotype enhance the infection of another serotype by facilitating viral entry into host cells. This can lead to severe manifestations of the disease, such as dengue hemorrhagic fever (DHF) and dengue shock syndrome (DSS). A successful vaccine must avoid inducing ADE, which adds a layer of complexity to vaccine design.

c) **Heterogeneity of immune responses:** The immune response to dengue varies significantly among individuals, influenced by factors such as age, genetic background, and previous exposure to the virus. This heterogeneity complicates the prediction of vaccine efficacy and safety across diverse populations.

d) **Limited animal models:** The lack of suitable animal models that accurately mimic human dengue infection and disease progression has hindered the preclinical testing of vaccine candidates. While mouse models and non-human primates have been used, they do not fully replicate the human immune response to dengue, particularly regarding ADE.

2. Current status of dengue vaccines:

As per WHO report, two dengue vaccines have been licensed: Dengvaxia® (CYD-TDV) by Sanofi Pasteur and Qdenga® (TAK-003) by Takeda. Additionally, another dengue vaccine, developed by the Laboratory of Infectious Diseases at the National Institutes of Allergy and Infectious Diseases (NIAID) in the United States, is currently in the late stages of clinical development.

- The **Dengvaxia** (CYD-TDV), developed by Sanofi Pasteur. Dengvaxia is the first licensed dengue vaccine and is a live attenuated vaccine that targets all four dengue serotypes. It is administered in a 3-dose series with a 6-month interval between doses. It is approved for individuals aged 9–45 years or 9–60 years, depending on country-specific

regulations, in regions where dengue is endemic. The vaccine requires pre-vaccination screening to confirm prior dengue virus infection, and only those who test positive are eligible to receive it. Due to the necessity of this pre-screening, the vaccine is not widely used at present.

- TAK-003 is the second licensed dengue vaccine. Developed by Takeda, it is a live-attenuated vaccine containing weakened forms of dengue virus serotypes 1, 2, 3, and 4, with the DENV2 strain serving as the genomic backbone. The vaccine is administered as a 2-dose series, with doses given three months apart, targeting specific age groups and circumstances as recommended by the WHO.
- However, the use of these vaccines are controversial due to safety concerns as listed below.

a) **Efficacy and safety:** Dengvaxia has shown efficacy in reducing dengue severity in individuals who have been previously infected with dengue. However, in seronegative individuals (those with no prior dengue exposure), the vaccine has been associated with an increased risk of severe dengue upon subsequent infection. This risk is likely due to ADE, where the vaccine-induced antibodies do not fully neutralize the virus but instead enhance its infection of host cells.

b) **Targeted use:** Due to these safety concerns, the WHO recommends Dengvaxia only for individuals aged 9-45 years who live in endemic areas and have confirmed previous dengue infection. This targeted approach aims to maximize the vaccine's benefits while minimizing the risk of ADE.

c) **Second-generation vaccines:** Research into second-generation dengue vaccines continues, with several candidates in various stages of clinical trials. These include vaccines based on different platforms, such as live attenuated viruses, recombinant proteins, DNA vaccines, and virus-like particles (VLPs). The goal is to develop a vaccine that provides broad protection against all four serotypes without inducing ADE.

3. Implications for therapeutics

In addition to vaccines, the development of effective therapeutics for dengue is a critical area of research. Current treatment for dengue is primarily supportive, focusing on managing symptoms and preventing complications. However, there is a pressing need for specific antiviral therapies that can target the virus or modulate the immune response to prevent severe disease.

a) **Antiviral agents:** Several antiviral agents are under investigation for dengue, aiming to inhibit viral replication or disrupt the viral life cycle. These include small molecules that target viral proteins, such as the NS3 protease and NS5 polymerase, essential for viral replication. However, finding antiviral agents that are both effective and safe has proven challenging due to the virus's high mutation rate and the need to avoid triggering ADE.

b) **Immune modulation:** Given the role of the immune system in dengue pathogenesis, particularly in severe cases, immune modulation is a promising therapeutic strategy. This could involve the use of corticosteroids or other immunosuppressive agents to dampen the harmful effects of the cytokine storm associated with severe dengue. However, this

approach carries risks, as suppressing the immune response could also impair the body's ability to control the infection.

c) **Monoclonal antibodies:** Monoclonal antibodies (mAbs) represent a targeted therapeutic option for dengue. These antibodies can be engineered to neutralize the virus without triggering ADE. Recent advances in mAb technology have led to the development of antibodies that can target multiple serotypes, offering broad protection. Clinical trials are ongoing to evaluate the safety and efficacy of these mAbs in treating and preventing dengue.

d) **Host-directed therapies:** Another approach involves targeting host factors that the virus exploits for replication. For example, inhibitors of cellular pathways involved in viral entry, replication, or assembly could potentially block the infection. This strategy reduces the likelihood of resistance, as it targets the host rather than the virus. However, such therapies must be carefully designed to avoid disrupting essential cellular functions.

e) **Combination therapies:** Given the complexity of dengue and its interaction with the immune system, combination therapies that target multiple aspects of the disease are a promising avenue. For example, combining an antiviral agent with an immune modulator could provide a more comprehensive approach to treatment, addressing both the viral load and the inflammatory response that contributes to severe disease.

Conclusion:

DENV is a mosquito-borne flavivirus that poses a significant global health challenge, primarily in tropical and subtropical regions. With four distinct serotypes (DENV-1 to DENV-4), the virus causes a range of illnesses from mild dengue fever to severe conditions like DHF and DSS. The immune response to DENV is complex, involving both innate and adaptive immunity. However, this response can be a double-edged sword, as mechanisms like antibody-dependent enhancement (ADE) can exacerbate disease severity during secondary infections.

Vaccine development for dengue is complicated by the need to provide immunity against all four serotypes while avoiding ADE. Currently, two licensed vaccine are available, but its use is limited due to safety concerns, particularly in seronegative individuals. Research continues on second-generation vaccines and therapeutic approaches, including antiviral agents, immune modulation, monoclonal antibodies, and host-directed therapies.

In conclusion, while progress has been made in understanding dengue's pathogenesis and in developing vaccines and therapeutics, significant challenges remain. Comprehensive approaches that address both viral control and immune response modulation are essential for effectively combating dengue and reducing its global burden.

References:

1. Ahamed, S.F., Rosario, V., Britto, C., Dias, M., Nayak, K., Chandele, A., Kaja, M.-K., Shet, A., 2019. Emergence of new genotypes and lineages of dengue viruses during the 2012–15 epidemics in southern India. International Journal of Infectious Diseases, Dengue Fever in India 84, S34–S43. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ijid.2019.01.014

2. Cao, J., Deng, H., Ye, L., Ma, X., Chen, S., Sun, X., Wu, X., Yan, T., Zhang, L., Liu, L., Li, L., Li, W., Hu, K., 2019. Epidemiological and clinical characteristics of Dengue virus outbreaks in two regions of China, 2014 – 2015. PLoS One 14, e0213353. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0213353
3. Jagtap, S., Pattabiraman, C., Sankaradoss, A., Krishna, S., Roy, R., 2023. Evolutionary dynamics of dengue virus in India. PLOS Pathogens 19, e1010862. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.ppat.1010862
4. Kalayanarooj, S., 2011. Clinical Manifestations and Management of Dengue/DHF/DSS. Trop Med Health 39, 83–87. https://doi.org/10.2149/tmh.2011-S10
5. Murugesan, A., Manoharan, M., 2020. Dengue Virus. Emerging and Reemerging Viral Pathogens 281–359. https://doi.org/10.1016/B978-0-12-819400-3.00016-8
6. Mustafa, M.S., Rasotgi, V., Jain, S., Gupta, V., 2015. Discovery of fifth serotype of dengue virus (DENV-5): A new public health dilemma in dengue control. Medical Journal Armed Forces India 71, 67–70. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.mjafi.2014.09.011
7. Roy, S.K., Bhattacharjee, S., 2021. Dengue virus: epidemiology, biology, and disease aetiology. Can. J. Microbiol. 67, 687–702. https://doi.org/10.1139/cjm-2020-0572
8. Schaefer, T.J., Panda, P.K., Wolford, R.W., 2024. Dengue Fever, in: StatPearls. StatPearls Publishing, Treasure Island (FL).
9. World Health Organization. (n.d.). Dengue vaccines: Questions and answers. World Health Organization. https://www.who.int/news-room/questions-and-answers/item/dengue-vaccines
10. Yergolkar, P.N., Cherian, S.S., Jadhav, S., Raut, C.G., Mourya, D.T., 2017. Genetic characterization of dengue virus types 1 and 2 in India, with emphasis on the viruses circulating in Karnataka. Indian J Med Res 146, 662–665. https://doi.org/10.4103/ijmr.IJMR_452_16
11. Yung, C.-F., Lee, K.-S., Thein, T.-L., Tan, L.-K., Gan, V.C., Wong, J.G.X., Lye, D.C., Ng, L.-C., Leo, Y.-S., 2015. Dengue Serotype-Specific Differences in Clinical Manifestation, Laboratory Parameters and Risk of Severe Disease in Adults, Singapore. Am J Trop Med Hyg 92, 999–1005. https://doi.org/10.4269/ajtmh.14-0628

MULTIDRUG RESISTANCE: AN EMERGING CHALLENGE

Shweta Arvind Pise – Atigre* and Suraj Dipak Gabale
Department of Microbiology, Vivekanand College, Kolhapur (Empowered Autonomous)
*Corresponding author E-mail: shwetapise29@gmail.com

There are different antimicrobial agents including antibiotics, antivirals, antifungals and antiparasitic which are used to treat many infectious diseases in humans, animals and plants. These agents have conferred protection against many infectious diseases over the long time.

The antimicrobial resistance occurs when the bacteria, fungi and other parasites no longer responds to antimicrobial medicines. When the causative agents of disease become resistant to treatment with more than one antibiotic then it is known as 'multidrug resistance (MDR)' and the organisms are called 'multidrug resistant organism'. The MDR which is most threatening to public health is MDR bacteria that resist multiple antibiotics and other types including viruses, parasites (resistant to antiviral, antiparasitic drugs). The antimicrobial resistance is not a new phenomenon. The microbes are constantly evolving to acquire resistance to the antimicrobial compounds produced by other microorganisms.

Common MDR organisms

Microorganisms	**Resistance to antibiotics**
Staphylococcus aureus	Methicillin (MRSA)
Enterococcus species	Vancomycin (VRE)
E. coli, Campylobacter	Fluoroquinolone
Mycobacterium tuberculosis	Isoniazid
E. coli, Neiserria gonorrhae, Shigella	Sulfonamides
Pseudomonas aeruginosa	Carbenicillin

Mechanism of drug resistance in bacteria:

The microorganisms acquire resistance to antibiotics through several mechanisms which includes prevention of cellular uptake or efflux, drug inactivation, change in target, enzymatic bypass.

1. Efflux of drug:

Some bacterial pathogens cause efflux of the drug through the efflux pumps in the cell membrane. These bacteria inhibit accumulation of an antimicrobial drug that prevents the drug from reaching the target. This mechanism is commonly observed in Gram negative bacteria than Gram positive bacteria. The efflux pumps in cell membrane are relatively nonspecific and hence can pump many drugs outside the cell. The efflux pump contains transport proteins and these are known as multidrug resistant pumps.

For example, resistance to beta lactams, tetracyclines and fluoroquinolones commonly occurs through efflux of these drugs out of the cell. This mechanism is common in *E. coli*, *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* and *Staphylococcus aureus*.

2. Drug inactivation

Some pathogenic bacteria acquire resistance by producing enzymes that modify or inactivates the drug.

Examples:

a) Enzymatic inactivation of penicillin G in some penicillin resistant bacteria by producing β-lactamases.
b) Some organisms synthesize enzyme 'acyl-transferase' which acetylates hydroxyl groups of chloramphenicol.

3. Target modification

It is a common mechanism of resistance where pathogens alter the target sites of antimicrobials that prevent drug binding. Bacteria can modify the antibiotics target to escape its activity.

Example:

1. Streptomycin resistance:The streptomycin binds to 'S12' protein of 30S ribosomal subunit. The bacteria acquire resistance to streptomycin by altering 'S12' protein due to mutations in gene coding for 'S12 protein'.
2. Alteration of penicillin binding protein (PBP) which is a target site for penicillin. In penicillin resistant bacteria, it is observed that, there is alteration of PBP which is a target site for penicillin.

4. Preventing entry of drug:

This mechanism involves preventing antibiotic access into the bacterial cell. Antimicrobial compounds require access into the bacterial cell to reach their target site, where they can interfere with the normal functions of the cell.

Some Gram-negative bacteria reduce the uptake of certain antibiotics such as aminoglycosides and beta-lactams by modifying cell membrane porin protein.

This mechanism has been observed in:

- Vancomycin intermediate-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (VISA)
- *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* against carbapenems

5. Enzymatic Bypass:

In some bacteria resistance to drug is acquired by altering or bypassing the metabolic step which is been inhibited by the drug. This strategy has been found as mechanism of sulphonamide resistance.

Ex. Bacteria use exogenous folic acid if synthesis is inhibited by the antibiotic.

6. Overproduction of target:

When an antimicrobial drug targets a specific enzyme to inhibit its activity, then bacteria may use this strategy. In this, the target enzyme is overproduced such that there is sufficient amount of enzyme to carry out the specific enzymatic reaction.

Classification of MDR:

MDR is a natural phenomenon, that occur within microbial species as a result of acquiring new resistance mechanism. Along with it, administration of appropriate doses of drug for specific duration of time, survival of various microbial strains favours MDR. MDR can be classified as primary or secondary multiple drug resistance.

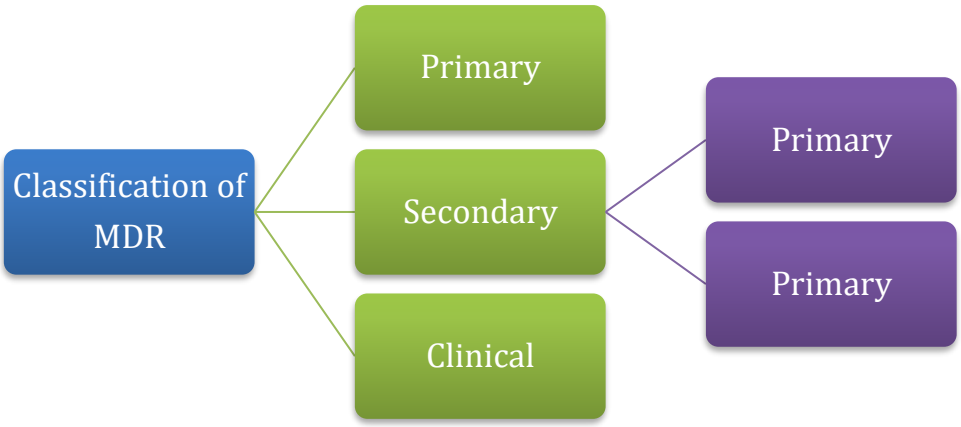
1. Primary Resistance:

Occurrence of resistance when an organism faced/ challenged the drug of interest in a particular host. This occurs in patient who have not previously treated with that antibiotic. Primary drug resistance is known to be caused by transfer of drug-resistant strains.

2. Secondary resistance:

Also called as "acquired resistance". The secondary resistance is the resistance that set in by an organism after an exposure to the drug or it can also be defined as resistance that arise in patient who has previously received chemotherapy. This can be further classified as:

a. Intrinsic resistance
b. Extrinsic resistance



Classification of Multiple drug resistance

a. Intrinsic resistance:

In is an innate ability of microorganisms to resist activity of certain common drug used to treat diseases based on clinical evidence of patient. It occurs through its inherent structural and functional features which tolerate that particular drug. This is also known as "insensitivity" as it happens in organisms that have never been susceptible to that particular drug. Such natural insensitivity may be because of:

- No affinity between drug and bacterial target
- Poor drug bioavailability
- Innate production of enzymes or substance that inactivate drug

b. Extrinsic resistance:

The extrinsic drug resistance is acquired by receiving drug resistant genes from other bacteria. It involves horizontal gene transfer from one bacterium to another.

❖ **Prevention of Multiple drug resistance (MDR):**

The increase in antimicrobial resistance is one of the major public health problems the world facing today. The MDR can affect anyone, anywhere. To overcome this global problem, we need a more coordinated, worldwide response. Different strategies can be used in order to prevent this global problem over human health.

- Improving the use of exiting antimicrobials
- Administrative support

The administrative support and involvement are important for successful control of MDR. The interventions that require administrative support include-

a. Implementing system to ensure prompt and effective communications.
b. Proving appropriate placements of hand washing sinks.
c. Monitoring the infection control practices.

- One of the best ways to control the spread of germs or bacteria is to wash hands with soap or detergent and water for at least 20 seconds.

References:

1. Tanwar, J., Das, S., Fatima, Z., & Hameed, S. (2014). Multidrug resistance: An emerging crisis. *Interdisciplinary perspectives on infectious diseases*, *2014*(1), 541340.
2. Wartu, J. R., Butt, A. Q., Suleiman, U., Adeke, M., Tayaza, F. B., Musa, B. J., & Baba, J. (2019). Multidrug resistance by microorganisms: A review. *Science World Journal*, *14*(4), 49-56.
3. Catalano, A., Iacopetta, D., Ceramella, J., Scumaci, D., Giuzio, F., Saturnino, C., & Sinicropi, M. S. (2022). Multidrug resistance (MDR): A widespread phenomenon in pharmacological therapies. *Molecules*, *27*(3), 616.
4. Osagie, A. E., & Olalekan, S. H. (2019). Multiple Drug resistance: A fast-growing threat. *Bio Med*, *21*, 2574-1241.
5. https://www.who.int/news-room/fact-sheets/detail/antimicrobial-resistance
6. https://wellcome.org/what-we-do/infectious-disease/antimicrobial-resistance?gad_source=1&gclid=CjwKCAjwodC2BhAHEiwAE67hJFesoY5V0eEkoZxMqmdXLFaPk9ZrgYIdl_nA-yFE3olBinxgp6WUFRoCHlcQAvD_BwE
7. https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Multiple_drug_resistance
8. https://bio.libretexts.org/Courses/Mansfield_University_of_Pennsylvania/BSC_3271%3A_Microbiology_for_Health_Sciences_Sp21_(Kagle)/09%3A_Antimicrobial_Drugs/9.05%3A_Antibiotic_Resistance#:~:text=Resistance%20most%20commonly%20results%20from,not%20inhibited%20by%20clavulanic%20acid

Vital Discoveries: Breakthroughs in Pharma and Health Science

(ISBN: 978-93-95847-64-3)

About Editors

Mrs. Niveditha Mohan M.Sc, B.Ed, working as an Assistant Professor in Department of Studies in Botany, Davangere University, Shivagangothri, Davangere, Karnataka, India. Presently she is working as Coordinator in Department of Botany, Jnanagangothri PG Centre Chitradurga. She is pursuing her PhD degree from Kuvempu University Shankaraghatta, Shivamogga. She has 9 Years of Academic Experience in various Educational Institution for the undergraduate and post graduate students. She has attended and presented her work in several National and International symposia and conferences and also attended several online Faculty development program and certificate courses. Her research area of interest lies in Microbiology, Environmental Science and Nanotechnology.

Prof. Sulekha Tripathi is a dedicated academic specializing in Botany and Agricultural Science. She is working as Assistant Professor at Department of Science, Vindhya Institute of Management and Science, Satna (M.P.)She is currently pursuing her Ph.D. in Botany from APS University, Rewa (M.P.). Prof. Tripathi has actively participated in numerous national and international seminars and conferences, contributing to the academic discourse in her field. Her scholarly output includes the publication of multiple book chapters, four research papers, and the editing of two books. With her expertise and commitment to advancing knowledge in Botany and Agricultural Science, Prof. Tripathi continues to make significant contributions to the academic community.

Dr. Swati Koli, was awarded B.V.Sc & A.H. degree from NDVSU, Jabalpur, M.V.Sc. from DUVASU, Mathura and Ph.D. with a fellowship from IVRI, Izatnagar, (U.P.). Her academic career consists of 09 research papers in International/Indian journals, 4 book chapters, several research abstracts, articles in training and technical manuals and many popular articles. She worked as Co-organizing secretary in National Seminar on “Antimicrobial Resistance: A One Health Perspective” organized by the Department of Veterinary Pharmacology and Toxicology, Co.V.Sc. & A.H., Mhow. She is an Editorial member of Edwin Group of Journals. She received the “Best Young Scientist Award” at 6th International Conference on Veterinary & Livestock organized by Conference Mind. Awarded “Best Poster Award” in Xth Annual Convention of the Society for Veterinary Sciences & Biotechnology (SVSBT). She has been felicitated with “Krantijyoti Savitribai Phule Women’s Achievers Award-2024” by Pashudhan Praharee for her appreciable work in the veterinary field.

Dr. Averineni Ravi Kumar is a distinguished Professor at Nimra College of Pharmacy, Vijayawada, Andhra Pradesh, with over 31 years of teaching experience. He earned his Doctorate in Biotechnology from Bharathidasan University in 2009, focusing on "Ethnopharmacological Studies of Selected Plants of Caesalpiniaceae." Dr. Kumar completed his M.Pharm. in Pharmacognosy and B.Pharmacy at AU College of Pharmaceutical Sciences, Andhra University, graduating with top honors. He has held various academic positions, from Lecturer to Dean, in several prestigious pharmacy colleges. Dr. Kumar is a Life Member of professional bodies such as IPA, OPF, APTI, and ABAP and has organized and spoken at numerous academic events. With over 106 research papers published in national and international journals, he is also an accomplished author and editor of several textbooks in pharmaceutical sciences. He holds five patents related to herbal studies, reflecting his commitment to innovation and research.

Bhumi Publishing

ISBN 978-93-95847-64-3

9 789395 847643